Altaic Languages Series 02

A STUDY OF THE TACHENG DIALECT OF THE DAGUR LANGUAGE

This book is a linguistic description of the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language, based on the fieldwork carried by The Mongolian Languages team of Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages, the Altaic Society of Korea.

In the first chapter, Dagur people, genetic position of the Dagur language, its 4 dialects are introduced. Also the aspect and the nature of the endangerment of this 'severely endangered' language are discussed.

In the second chapter, we report our trip to Tacheng (Xinjiang, China), people who worked with us, and our consultants who were eager to help us.

The third chapter of this work includes the phonological, the morphological, and the syntactic features of the Tacheng Dagur dialect. In the phonology part, 18 vowel phonemes and 18 consonants phonemes are tentatively proposed with their allophones. In the morphology, pertinent features to each parts of speech (noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb, adverb, postposition, particle, interjection) are discussed. In the syntax, remarks were made on the word order, finite forms, and conjunctions, etc.

In the appendix, 2600 words, 340 conversational expressions, 283 sentences and constructions were presented in phonemic transcription with English meanings. Over 100 unanswered words are also presented in the separate section with Chinese and English meanings.

A STUDY OF THE TACHENG DIALECT OF THE DAGUR LANGUAGE

YU Wonsoo, KWON Jae-il, CHOI Moon-jeong, SHIN Yong-kwon, BORJIGIN Bayarmend, Luvsand

220.5
Yuw
1

www.snupress.com
93970

Altaic Languages Series 02

A STUDY OF THE TACHENG DIALECT OF THE DAGUR LANGUAGE

YU Wonsoo, KWON Jae-il, CHOI Moon-Jeong, SHIN Yong-kwon, BORJIGIN Bayarmend, Luvsandorj BOLD

126729
220.5
Yuw
1

A Study of the Tacheng Dialect of the Dagur Language

"This work was supported by the Korea Research Foundation Grant." (KRF-2003-072-AL2002)

A STUDY OF
THE TACHENG DIALECT OF
THE DAGUR LANGUAGE

YU Wonsoo
KWON Jae-il
CHOI Moon-Jeong
SHIN Yong-kwon
BORJIGIN Bayarmend
Luvsandorj BOLD

Seoul National University Press

MAX-PLANCK-INSTITUT
für Psycholinguistik
Nijmegen
Inv.Nr. P. 11. 160

List of Contributors

YU Wonsoo	Institute of Humanities, Seoul National University, Korea
KWON Jae-il	Department of Linguistics, Seoul National University, Korea
CHOI Moon-Jeong	Institute of Humanities, Seoul National University, Korea
SHIN Yong-kwon	Department of Chinese Language and Cultural Studies, University of Incheon, Korea
BORJIGIN Bayarmend	Institute of Mongol Studies, Inner Mongolia University, China
Luvsandorj BOLD	Mongol Academy of Sciences, Mongol

Altaic Languages Series 2
A Study of the Tacheng Dialect of the Dagur Language

Copyright © 2008 by The Altaic Society of Korea
Printed in Seoul, Korea

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, except for brief quotations, without written permission from Seoul National University Press.

Seoul National University Press
599 Gwanak-ro, Gwanak-gu, Seoul 151-742, Korea

E-mail: snubook@snu.ac.kr
Home Page: http://www.snupress.com

First Printing: August 29, 2008

ISBN 978-89-521-0949-1 93970

Contents

Preface vii
Abbreviations xi

1 General Introduction 1

1.1 The Dagur people 1
1.2 The Dagur language 2
1.2.1 Genetic position of the Dagur language 2
1.2.2 Dialects of the Dagur language 2
1.2.3 Language vitality and endangerment 6

2 General Description on the Fieldwork Studies in Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region 9

2.1 Participants 9
2.2 Trip to Tacheng, Xinjiang 9
2.3 People who worked with us 10
2.4 Consultants 10

3 Linguistic Description of the Tacheng Dialect of the Dagur Language 15

3.1 Phonological description 15
3.1.1 Vowels 15
3.1.2 Consonants 25
3.1.3 Loan segments 36

3.2 Morphological description 39
3.2.1 Noun 39
3.2.2 Adjective 47
3.2.3 Numeral 48
3.2.4 Pronoun 55
3.2.5 Verb 66
3.2.6 Adverb 76
3.2.7 Postposition 77
3.2.8 Particle 78
3.2.9 Interjection 79
3.3 Syntactic description 80
3.3.1 Word order 80
3.3.2 Conjunction 81
3.3.3 Negation 83
3.3.4 Interrogative 85
3.3.5 Passive 87
3.3.6 Causative 88

Appendix 1: Vocabulary 91
Appendix 2: Basic Conversational Expressions 173
Appendix 3: Data for the Grammatical Analysis 199

References 225
Abstract 227

Preface

The Mongolian Languages team of the Altaic Society of Korea, Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages (henceforth ASK REAL) carried out its fieldwork studies on more than 20 endangered Mongolian languages and dialects from September of 2003 to January 2008. Information is given in the following order: name of the object language(dialect); place of the fieldwork study; time period of the fieldwork study.

1. Dagur(Qiqihaer); Meilis Dagur Nationality District, Qiqihaer City, Heilongjiang Province, China; 2003. 9. 23.－9. 26.
2. Buryat(Aga Khori); Ulan-Ude; 2004. 4. 22.－4. 23. (2-1. Buryat(Khori); Seoul, Korea: 2004. 10. 8., 10. 10.)
3. Ööld(Düükhee/Döchin Tolgoi); Ölziit Sum, Arkhangai Aimag, Mongolia; 2004. 6. 26.
4. Dagur(Tacheng): Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region; 2004. 10. 18.－10. 21.
5. Khuuchin Barga; Hailaer District, Hunlunbeier City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2005. 2. 16.－2. 19.
6. Darkhad; Jankhain Tsagaan Ereg, Alag-Erdene Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2005. 6. 23.－6. 26. (6-1. Darkhad; Seoul, Korea; 2007. 6. 18., 6. 28.)
7. Shera Yogur or Eastern Yugur; Hongwansi Town, Sunan Yugu Nationality Autonomous County, China(中國甘肅省肅南裕固族自治縣紅灣寺鎭); 2005. 10. 17.－10. 21.

8. (Dörvöd) Kalmyk; Elista City, Kalmyk Republic, Russia; 2006. 4. 18.－4. 21.
9. Arig Uriankhai; Byarangiin gol, Chandman-Öndör Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 6. 27.－6. 29.
10. Üüriin Uriankhai; Tsegtseriing üzüür, Tsagaan Üür Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 7. 1.－7. 3.
11. Bonan(Nianduhu, Tongren): Xining City, Qinghai Province, China(中國青海省西寧市): 2006. 8. 19.－8. 21.
12. Monguor(Minhe): Xining City, Qinghai Province, China (中國青海省西寧市): 2006. 8. 23.－8. 25.
13. Buryat(Ekhirit-Bulagat); Ust-Ordynsk City, Irkutsk Oblast, Russia; 2007. 1. 19.－1. 22.
14. Buryat(Alar); Cheremkhovo City, Irkutsk Oblast, Russia; 2007. 1. 23.－1. 25.
15. Buryat(Tunka); Arshaan, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 27.－1. 28.
16. Buryat(Oka): Arshaan, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 29.
17. Khamnigan(Binder, Dadal); Chingisiin toonot of Binder Sum and Gurvan nuur of Dadal Sum, Khentii Aimag, Mongolia; 2007. 7. 6.－7. 11.
18. Buryat(Tsongool), Tashir Village, Selengiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 3.－8. 5.
19. Buryat(Sartuul); Ulzar Village, Dzidinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 6.－8. 7.
20. Buryat(Bargazaan); Bayangol Village, Barguzin Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 10.
21. Oirat(Hoboksair); Hebukesaier Autonomous County(和布克賽爾蒙古自治縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 6.－1. 8.
22. Oirat(Bortala); Jinghe County(精河縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 10.; Urumqi city, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 13.－1. 14.

23. Oirat(Bayanggol); Urumqi City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 11.－1. 12.

The Mongolian team of the ASK REAL plans to publish books beginning this year. The first book will be a general report on our fieldwork studies conducted between September of 2003 to July of 2006. This report is written in Korean, and reports by Mongolian team is included in the book together with reports by the Turkic languages team and the Tungusic languages team of the ASK REAL.

The second work is this very book which is a fieldwork report and a linguistic description on the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language. From this second book on, the materials will be written in English.

The Turkic languages team and the Tungus languages team of the ASK REAL also did fieldwork studies on some 10~20 languages(dialects), and they have similar plans for publication.

Abbreviations

1: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the first person
2: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the second person
3: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the third person
abl: Ablative
acc: Accusative
aim: Verbal noun suffix marking "aim, purpose"
asp: Aspect marker
cm: Causative marker
col: Collective marker
con: Converbal
conc: Concessive
cop: copula verb
dl: Dative-Locative
dir: Directional
dis: Distributive
emp: Emphatic aspect
exc: Exclusive
fut: Future imperfective
gen: Genitive
inc: Inclusive
ins: Instrumental
int: Intentional mood marker, interjection, or interrogative marker
neg: Negative marker
opt: Optative marker

ord: Ordinal marker
nom: Nominative
par: Particle
pas: Past perfective
pre: Present imperfective
pl: Plural
pm: Passive marker
pol: polite imperative marker
prog: Progressive marker
ref: Reflexive possessive
sg: Singular
vni: Verbal noun imperfective
vnp: Verbal noun perfective
vol: Voluntative marker
WM: Written Mongolian

1

General Introduction

1.1 The Dagur people

The Dagur people are known as descendants of the Khitan (契丹) who founded the Liao dynasty (遼, 907-1125) in today's northern China. The Dagur people lived in Dauria, east of the lake Baikal, until the mid-17th century. Then they moved southward to avoid the Tsarist Russian aggression, and settled down along the Nonni river which is today's Hulunbeier City of Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region (內蒙古自治區呼倫貝爾市) and the western part of Heilongjiang Province (黑龍江省), China.

In the middle of the 18th century, Dagur troops and their families were sent to northern Xinjiang to confront the Tsarist Russian aggression, and most of their descendants are now living in Tacheng Prefecture of Ili Kazakh Autonomous Prefecture, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region (新疆維吾爾自治區伊犁哈薩克自治州塔城地區) of China.

The population of the Dagur ethnics was 121,357 in the 1990 census, and increased as much as 132,394 in the 2000 census. Thus we may assume that they have reached around 140,000 these days. It can be supposed that more than 70,000 of them are in Inner Mongolia, about 50,000 in Heilongjiang, and 7,000 in Xinjiang. The remaining 10,000 or more Dagurs

are in neighboring provinces such as Jilin (吉林), Liaoning (遼寧) and big cities as Beijing (北京), Shanghai (上海), and Tianjin (天津).

1.2 The Dagur language

1.2.1 Genetic position of the Dagur language

The Dagur language is one of the Mongolian languages. According to Aerdazhabu (Ardajab 2000: 162-181) and some other scholars, it has maintained an abundant amount of the earlier traits of the Mongolian language. Many words of *The Secret History of the Mongols* (1240) remain only in Dagur. Phonological forms of certain words in The Secret History of the Mongols (1240) match those of the Dagur language best among modern Mongolian languages. Certain words of The *Zhiyuanyiyu* (至元譯語) (1282) are found only in the Dagur language and several other Mongolian languages.[1)]

1.2.2 Dialects of the Dagur language

According to Enhebatu (1988: 22-26), there are four major dialects in the Dagur language.

1.2.2.1 Buteha (布特哈, put^{h}χa,) or Batakan (=pat^{h}ak^{h}an)[2)] dialect

It is the largest dialect of the Dagur language. It seems that the Chinese name Dawoer (達斡爾) came from the word *daur* 'Dagur' of this dialect.

It seems that the name of the dialect was derived from the Buteha Eight Banners (布特哈八旗) which were established in

1) For the transcription of the words of The Secret History of the Mongols, one may refer to Yu (2004). For those of the *Zhiyuanyiyu*, Kara (1990) and Ligeti et al. (1990) are useful,

2) Pronunciation of the Qiqihaer Dagurs.

1689 under the Office of the Governor General of Buteha (布特哈總管衙門)[3] of which jurisdiction approximately matches today's Molidawa Dawoer Nationality Autonomous Banner (莫力達瓦達斡爾族自治旗), Elunchun Nationality Autonomous Banner (鄂倫春族自治旗) of Inner Mongolia, and several counties and a city of Heilongjiang province such as Gannan (甘南縣), Nehe (訥河縣), Dedu (德都縣), Nenjiang (嫩江縣), and Aihui District (瑷輝區) of Heihe City (黑河市). According to Tsumagari (2003: 129), about 48% of the Dagur ethnics spoke in this dialect in 1982. It is divided into four subdialects. They are as follows:

Nawen (納文, naun) subdialect: spoken in Molidawa Dawoer Autonomous Banner of Inner Mongolia.

Nemoer (訥莫爾, nəmor) subdialect: spoken in Nehe county and Dedu county of Heilongjiang Province.[4]

Morigen (墨日根, mərgən) subdialect: spoken in Nenjiang county of Heilongjiang Province.

Aihui (瑷琿): spoken in Aihui District of Heihe City of Heilongjiang Province.

1.2.2.2 Qiqihaer (齊齊哈爾, $ts^hits^hik^har$) dialect

It is the second largest dialect of the Dagur language. Again according to Tsumagari (2003: 129), about 43% of the Dagur ethnics spoke this dialect in 1982.

It is spoken in Qiqihaer City (齊齊哈爾市), Longjiang County (龍江縣), Fuyu County (富裕縣) of Heilongjiang Province, and Jalantun City (札闌屯市) and Arong Banner (阿榮旗) of Inner

3) According to Mao (2004: 13) et al, Office of the Governor General of Buteha was located in today's Yiwoqi Village (宜臥奇村), north-east of Nierji Town (尼爾基鎮), where the administrative office of the Molidawa Dawoer Nationality Autonomous Banner is.

4) It seems that one of the two consultants of Seong (1983), the first work of the Korean scholars on the Dagur language, was brought up in this subdialect (Nemoer) area until 18 years old, then moved to the Nawen subdialect area. It seems that the other consultant, wife of the first consultant, was a native of this subdialect too.

Mongolia.

Jalantun City was called as Buteha Banner (布特哈旗) until 1983; however, one should keep in mind that this Butheha Banner of the Qiqihaer dialect is not the same as the aforementioned Buteha Eight Banners (布特哈旗) of the Buteha dialect.

The Mongolian Languages team of the ASK REAL carried out fieldwork studies on the Meilis subdialect of the Qiqihaer dialect during september 23-26, 2003, as mentioned in the preface.

1.2.2.3 Hailaer dialect

It is spoken in Bayantala Dawoer Nationality Township (巴顏塔拉達斡爾族鄉), Moheertu village (莫和爾圖嘎查) of Bayancuogang County (巴顏嵯崗蘇木) of Ewenke Nationality Autonomous Banner (鄂溫克族自治旗), and Hailaer District of Hulunbeier City, Inner Mongolia.

According to Tsumagari (2003: 129), about 5% of the Dagur ethnics spoke this dialect in 1982.

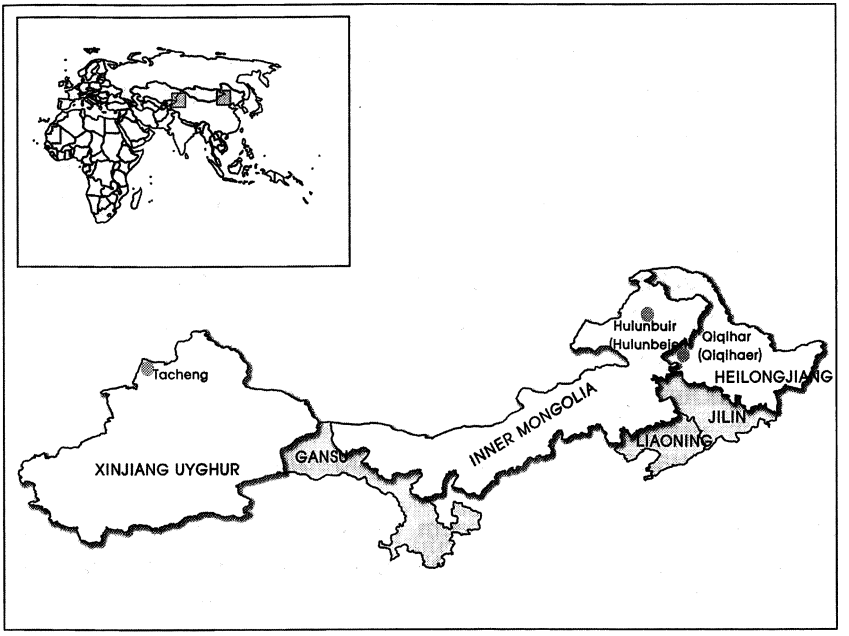
1.2.2.4 Tacheng dialect

The Xinjiang Dagurs are concentrated in the city of Tacheng (塔城市) and its vicinity in Tacheng Prefecture (塔城地區) of Ili Kazakh Autonomous Prefecture (伊犁哈薩克自治州) of Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China.

According to Tsumagari (2003: 129), about 4% of the Dagur ethnics spoke this dialect in 1982.

The most densely populated area of this dialect is Axier [açir~açil] Dawoer Nationality Township of Tacheng City (塔城市阿西爾達斡爾民族鄉). Even there, Dagur ethnics form only 20% of the whole population of the township, or 2178 out of 10,529, according to a web site on the Dagurs.[5)]

5) 達斡爾族網 (http: //www.dawoer.com)



Picture 1. Distribution of the Dagur dialects

Native speakers of this dialect call their language "Dagor usug ([taʁor uzuɣ], Dagur language)," and identify themselves as "Tagor xuː ([taʁor xuː], Dagur people)." Although it is one of the four main Dagur dialects, it has not been called much to the attention of scholars, perhaps because its population is only around 7000, and it is not easy to visit their home place Tacheng in Northern Xinjiang.

According to Guo·Baerdeng et al. (1997: 41), the Dagur population of Tacheng Prefecture are the offspring of the 500 Dagur troops and their family who transferred to the jurisdiction of the Assistance Minister of Taerbahatai (Tarbagatai) of Ili General (伊犁將軍塔爾巴哈台參贊大臣) in 1763-1765 from the jurisdiction of the Governor general of Buteha of Heilongjiang General (黑龍江將軍布特哈總管) of the Qing government.

They were stationed in Ili (伊犁) and Huoerguosi (霍爾果斯) together with the Ewenki troops. Then they were relocated to Tarbagatai (塔爾巴哈台) together with the Xibo (錫伯) and the Ewenki troops in 1872.

During 1913-1916, after the Republic of China abolished the Eight Banner system, the Dagurs moved to regions in the vicinity of Tacheng such as Axier (阿西爾), Abudula (阿布都拉), Qiaxia (恰夏), Wengenqike (溫根齊克), Derizejiafuke (德日則加甫克), Liushengdi (六升地), and Sangong (三公), and engaged themselves in agriculture and cattle raising.

1.2.3 Language vitality and endangerment

Dagur dialects, in general, seem to be severely endangered according to the standards of UNESCO Ad Hoc Expert Group on Endangered Languages (2003: 8): "The language is spoken only by grandparents and older generations; while the parent generation may still understand the language, they typically do not speak it to their children, or among themselves."

Dagur people are a minority even in their own autonomous nationality administrative units, and they have to be fluent speakers of Chinese, or Chinese and Kazakh, or Chinese and Mongolian in school, at work, and in the market. Dagur is not used in mass media. It has no generally accepted writing system, therefore no literature. It has never been a classroom language. As a result, the Dagur youths of the urban area have no opportunity to learn their mother tongue in a natural environment, or in a systematic way.

Based on a sample survey taken in 1997, Enhebatu (2000: 182-197), stated that 6.76% of the Dagur residence of Inner Mongolia "use only Chinese (轉用漢語)" and 12.41% "use basically only Chinese (基本轉用漢語)." Then it may be understood that the remaining 80.83% of the Dagur population "use not only Chinese (未轉用漢語)" in Inner Mongolia. In other words, 80.83% of the Dagur population in Inner Mongolia spoke in

Chinese and in one or more other languages at the time of survey. The strongest candidate for the other languages here must be Dagur, and then Mongolian; however, Enhebatu (2000) did not specifically mention other languages. Information about the proficiency of each generation of the Dagur speaking people, environments or domains where they speak their mother tongue, etc. are not available in this survey.

As Piao (2003: 118) informed us, "The first communication language"[6] of the Dagur ethnics of the Meilis Dawoer Nationality District of Qiqihaer City, Heilongjiang Province, one of the denser residence places of the Dagur ethnics, is Chinese, except in Woniutu Town (臥牛吐鎭) and Manggetu Township (莽格吐鄉, Maŋgətʰu aːl), among 4 towns (鎭) and 4 townships (鄉) of the whole nationality district. It is natural in a way because Dagur ethnics constitute only 12,368 out of 170,923, or 7.26% of the whole Dawoer Nationality District population as of 2000. Besides these two areas, only Duermenqin Dagur ethnic township (杜爾門沁達斡爾族鄉) of Fulaerji District (富拉爾基區) is a place where Dagur is "the first communication language" of the Dagur people of Qiqihaer City.

During our fieldwork studies in Meilis Dawoer Nationality District of Qiqihaer City of Heilongjiang Province, which lasted from September 23 to 26 of 2003, it was hard to encounter a Dagur person, regardless of age, who communicates in Dagur with another Dagur person-little more than the exchange of greetings, in the street, in shops, in the park where many seniors gather for their morning exercise, in the open market (大集), and at the bus station of the main district. People in their 50s and under show great discrepancy in mother tongue proficiency. The Meilis subdialect has almost no "real" native speakers under age 40.

In another one of our fieldwork studies of the Dagur language in Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region,

6) The term used by Piao (2003: 118) is "제1교제용어 (Cheil kyoje yongŏ)," that is 第一交際用語 in Chinese writing.

we found out that Dagur ethnics of this area are fluent in Kazakh and Chinese, both in language and literature. They use Chinese and Kazakh in their everyday life. It seemed that people over their 50s and very few in their 30s and 40s use the Dagur language in non-official domains. It seems that many of the Dagur people over their 50s in this area speak Kazakh and Chinese better than their mother tongue.

As a conclusion, the Dagur language is severely endangered. However, there still remains hope for revival of this language in that there are fluent speakers such as our consultants in their 50s, and there are places where Dagur is still "the first communication language." One of the important factors for the revival of the Dagur language would be the attitudes of the Dagur ethnics themselves towards their mother tongue.

2

General Description on the Fieldwork Studies in Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region

2.1 Participants

The Mongolian language team of ASK REAL team is made of Hoyoung Lee (overall process, audio recording), Wonsoo YU (transcription), Hyangshil JANG (question), Kyounga KUK (video recording), and Prof. Baeg-in SEONG (overall process, interview, question, transcription, audio recording).[1)]

2.2 Trip to Tacheng, Xinjiang

Participants left Incheon International Airport at 10:00 of October 16, 2004 by OZ331 (Asiana Airlines), and arrived at Beijing International Airport 10:45 of the same day. Team waited until 14: 40 to board CZ9102 (中國南方航空) and arrived at Wulumuqi (Urumqi) Diwopu International Airport (乌

1) There was one more team from ASK REAL for Xibo, a Tungusic language, in Xinjiang. However, their efforts and achievements are to be reported by themselves in other books.

鲁木齐地窝堡国际机场) at 18:20 of the same day. Mr. Wenqin HE (何文勤)[2] and Prof. Juwon KIM[3] received the team at the airport. They arrived there a week before us for the preparation of the fieldwork study.

The team spent the night at a hotel in Urumqi and left the city at 13:05 of October 17, 2004 to arrive at Tacheng airport at 14:10 of the same day by CZ9939 (中國南方航空), 637 kilometers away from Urumqi city by land.

Each of the flights were taken precisely on schedule.

2.3 People who worked with us

When the ASK REAL team arrived at the Xinjiang Tacheng Region Hotel (新疆塔城地區賓館), 16 Youhao Street (友好街) of Tacheng City by taxi around 17:00 of October 17, 2004, members of the Association of the Xinjiang Tacheng City Dawoer Nationality History, Language, Culture Studies[4] were waiting to give warm welcome and work with us.

2.4 Consultants

2.4.1 Mr. Jiazi (甲孜, 57 years old)

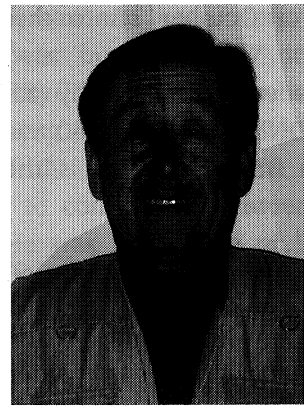
Mr. Jiazi arrived at the Hotel in the afternoon of October 18, 2004. Investigation was done in room 416 of the hotel. His own identification in his mother tongue is Dagor usug[taʁoɾ uzuɣ] for his language, and Ashil[aɕil] for his native place.

---

2) A respected Xibo from Qapqal. Xinjiang (察布查爾錫伯自治縣), a retired high school principal.

3) He is in charge of the ASK REAL from the beginning of the project.

4) 新疆塔城市達斡爾族歷史語言文化研究學會. Tarptie Dagur Sorel Horinin in Dagur. Mr. E. Baibingyan (鄂·白炳言), the chair.



Picture 2. Our consultant Mr. Jiazi.

He was born in 1948 in Keqian Village ([Kʰətɕʰen ayl]) of Axier Dawoer Nationality Township, Tacheng City (塔城市阿西爾達斡爾民族鄉克淺村), and was raised in the same place. It is 18 kilometers away to the northeast from the main district of the city. He is the director of the Culture Center of Axier Township (阿西爾達斡爾民族鄉文化館長). He is famous in Xinjiang as a Dagur ethnic musician and dancer, and is steadily appearing on CCTV (中央電視台).

Besides Dagur, his Kazakh and Chinese proficiency is close to the native speaker's level. He speaks 6 or 7 languages including Xibo, a Tungusic language spoken in Northern Xinjiang, Russian, and a certain Mongolian dialect of the Northern Xinjiang. When young, he spoke Mongolian well. He uses Chinese and Kazakh at work, and Dagur at home.

The team asked questions in Chinese and consultant replied twice in Dagur. As a result, the team recorded 2,651 words out of 2,784 words asked, all 342 conversational expressions asked, and 283 out of 284 sentences and constructions asked for the grammatical structure of the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language. The team also recorded the self introduction of the consultant, 4 Dagur folk songs, and his explanations on Dagur customs and proprieties. The investigation was made

from the afternoon of October 18 to the morning of October 21, 2004.

The entire process was recorded by a SONY DAT-TCD 100 tape recorder and SONY DCR-TRV 940 video camera.

Linguistic material from Mr. Jiazi is the main object of discussion in this work.

2.4.2. Mr. Toohan (鄂·托漢, 52 years old)

Investigation was done in room 418 of the hotel. He was born in 1952 in Keqian Village of Axier Dawoer Nationality Township of Tacheng City and lived there until he graduated from high school. He graduated from a college in some other place. His major was Chinese language. After graduating college he returned to Tacheng to work in Tacheng Frontier Economy Cooperation Region (塔城邊境經濟合作區) until his retirement.

Mr. Toohan was asked to read the Chinese translation of the 8th chapter of *Chŏng ŏ no gŏldae* (『清語老乞大』 8卷), one of the text books of the Sayŏkwŏn (司譯院, 1393-1894) of Chosŏn dynasty (1392-1910) of Korea for Manchu language, in his Dagur dialect. In this survey, Zhuang (1976)'s Chinese translation of *Chŏng ŏ no gŏldae* was used after Prof. Baikin SEONG transformed it into Chinese simplified characters. Mr. Toohan's Dagur reading was recorded by a Sony TCM 80 recorder.

2.4.3 Mr. Guo Bardeng (郭·巴爾登, 70 years old), Mr. Guo Dinglifu (郭·丁立夫, 67 years old), and Mr. E. Longjitu (鄂, 龍吉圖, 69 years old)

Prof. SEONG interviewed Mr. Guo Bardeng, Mr. Guo Dinglifu, and Mr. O. Longjitutwo and recorded over 1,000 words of basic vocabulary.

Mr. Guo Bardeng was born in 1934 in Keqian Village of Axier Dawoer Nationality Township of Tacheng City. He went to middle school in Tacheng City. He worked in the Library of Tacheng Region, Xinjiang until his retirement. He was a

very knowledgeable person and knew very well of old sayings.

Mr. Guo Dinglifu was born in 1937 in Keqian Village of Axier Dawoer Nationality Township of Tacheng City. He went to middle school in Tacheng City. He began his career as a public servant at the age of 24 in Urumqi. He returned to Tacheng City at the age of 36 to continue his career as a public servant until his retirement. He was a delegate of the National People's Congress of Tacheng City (塔城市人民代表大會).

Mr. E. Longjitu was born in 1935 in Axier Village of Axier Dawoer Nationality township of Tacheng city. He went to middle school in Tacheng City and has lived there his entire lifetime. He is the chief of the radiology department of People's Hospital of Xinjiang Tacheng Region (新疆塔城地區人民醫院).

2.4.4 Ms. Ayinghuar ([ajəŋhwar], 77 years old) and villagers

The team visited Kurdbiye village of Axier Dawoer Nationality Township in the afternoon of October 21, 2004 to meet with



Picture 3. Ms. Ayinghuar (in front of the microphone) and the villagers

Ms. Ayinghuar[ajəŋhwar 'beautiful flower' in Dagur) and her children, and seven other villagers. She knew only the Dagur language while other villagers her children's age knew Kazakh and Chinese very well. Villagers told the team about the life of the rural area, customs, and several folk tales, and the team recorded the stories.

3

Linguistic Description of the Tacheng Dialect of the Dagur Language

3.1 Phonological description

As mentioned above, Mr. Jiazi answered at least twice for each of the 2,651 words, 342 conversational expressions 283 grammatical constructions. His pronunciation is the data for linguistic description in this book.

When possible, Meilis subdialect forms of the Qiqihaer dialect from the ASK REAL fieldwork studies of 2003, formerly introduced in YU (2003) and YU et al. (2004), are presented along with the Tacheng forms. Buteha forms in Enhebatu et al. (1984) are also presented with slight alteration of the shapes of some phonetic symbols. Buteha forms in Enhebatu et al. (1984) are simply cited as Buteha when more information is not necessary.

3.1.1 Vowels

The following vowel phonemes are proposed for the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language:

① 6 short vowel phonemes /a/, /o/, /ə/, /u/, /e/, /i/.

② 6 long vowel phonemes /aː/, /oː/, /əː/, /uː/, /eː/, /iː/.

③ 6 diphthong phonemes /aj/, /aw/, /oj/, /əj/, /əw/, /uj/

3.1.1.1 Short Vowels

The Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language has 8 short vowel phonemes altogether: 6 for both native words and loanwords, 2 for the Chinese loanwords. Only those 6 short vowel phonemes for both native and loanwords are discussed in this section. The remaining 2 phonemes which appear only in Chinese loanwords are discussed later in the separate section.

	[+FRONT,-BACK]	[-FRONT,-BACK]	[-FRONT,+BACK]
[+HIGH, -LOW]	i	u	
[-HIGH, -LOW]	e	ə	o
[-HIGH, +LOW]			a

(1) /a/ [-LOW, +HIGH, -FRONT, +BACK]

It has [a] and [ɛ] as allophones. Vowel [æ] occasionally appears as a variant of [ɛ]. Seong (1983: 127-128) has identified [a], [ɑ], [æ], [ɐ], and [ɐ̆] as the allophones of phoneme /a/, unrounded-low vowel, in the speech of his Dagur informants Mr. Hugejintai (胡格金台) and Mrs. E. Yuhe (鄂玉和),[1] while Enhebatu (1988: 27-28) proposed only [ɑ], unrounded open low back vowel (展唇開低後元音), slightly fronted in comparison to the IPA [ɑ], and [a], which occurs before [i], [j], or a palatalized consonant (鄂化輔音)[2] for the Buteha dialect.

[a] Open back unrounded vowel

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
sand	ɕiptal	ɕiltar	ʃirtɑ:l	-
stallion	adɨrχ	adərəɣ	ɑdrəɣ	WM aǰirɣ-a(n)

1) According to Seong (1983: 122-123), Mr. Hugejintai is a Dagur from Kuiltʃeŋ ail, east bank of Nehe river (訥河縣 奎勒淺愛勒), and his wife Mrs. E. Yuhe (鄂玉和) is a Dagur from Xoril ail, west bank of Nen river (巴顏旗, 和禮屯).

2) His study is based on the Nawen subdialect of Buteha dialect of the Dagur language.

[ɛ] Open-mid front unrounded vowel

This vowel appears when followed by a vowel [i] or, after a palatal or alveolar consonant, if it occurs.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
eyebrow	sɛɾmilt^h/ sarimilt^h	sarimut	sɑrmilt	WM sormusu(n)[3]
life	ɛm/am	-	ɑm	WM ami
mouse	atɕ^{h}iqtɕ^{h}ɛ̃n	atɕ^{h}iktɕ^{h}a	ɑtʃiktʃɑːn	-
school	t^{h}ɛtɕok^{h}o/ t^{h}aɕik^{h}u	-	taʃk^w	Manchu tacikū
face	ɲɛdəm/ ɲadəm	-	ɳɑdəm	-

It should be added that, in some cases, this sound is lowered to [æ], a near-open front unrounded vowel, which should be regarded as a variant of [ɛ]. Ding (1991: 6-61) pointed out a similar phenomenon and termed it as a fronting tendency (一部分後元音a, o的前化趨勢), which he thought the result of the influence of the Kazakh language.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
pupil	ɕɛɸj/ɕæɸj	ɕəbə/ɕəbi/ɕep	ʃeb	WM šabi

Further consideration may be needed to decide whether the [æ] which appears in certain loanwords are to be regarded as an allophone of /a/, for example, [ɕænbi]/[tɕ^{h}enbi] 'pencil' from Chinese *qiānbǐ* 鉛筆 or [k^{h}æroːsin]/[k^{h}areːsin] from Russian керосин 'kerosene'.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
pencil	ɕænbi/tɕ^{h}enbi	-	tʃɑnbiː
kerosene	k^{h}æroːsin/k^{h}areːsin	-	-

3) 'eyelash'

(2) [-LOW, -HIGH, -FRONT, +BACK] /o/

[o] Close-mid back rounded vowel

It appears mainly in initial syllables, and in the non-initial syllables of some words.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
lock	josoqʰ	-	joːsuklaː-[4]	Chinese 鈅匙[yuèshi]
Dagur	taʁoɾ	tagur	dɑur	
clear	caloŋqʰʷ	-	-	

[ø] Close-mid front rounded vowel

It appears when followed by palatal consonants or front vowels. Ding (1991: 60-61) explains the Tacheng [ø] as an influence from the Kazakh front vowel /ø/ (哈薩克語前元音æ, ø的影響所致).

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
horse	møɾ/moɾj	mœɾʲ/məɾə	mor	morin(n)
sheep	χoŋ	xəni	xon	qini(n)
twenty	χøɾj	xœɾʲ	moɾ	qori(n)

(3) [-LOW, -HIGH, -FRONT, -BACK] /ə/

It has only one allophone [ə].

[ə] Mid central vowel

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
owne	əʤin	əʤin	əʤin	eǰen
heaven	tʰəŋgəɾ	tʰəŋgər	təŋgər	tengger
now	ədəː	ədəː	ədəː	edüge

[ɨ], a close central unrounded vowel occurs as a variant of [ə]

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
house	kəɾ/kɨɾ	kəɾ	gər	ger
heaven	tʰəŋgəɾ/tʰəŋgɨɾ	tʰəŋgər	təŋgər	tengger

4) 鎖 'to lock'

(4) /u/ [-LOW, +HIGH, -FRONT, -BACK]
It has only one allophone [u].
[u] Close central rounded vowel

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
language	uzuɣ	xusuɣə	usuɣ^{w}
cattle	uk^{h}uɾ	xuk^{h}uɾ	xukur
fox	unuɣ	xunuɣɯ/unnux	xunuɣ^{w}

The close front rounded vowel [y] appears after a palatal or alveolar-palatal consonants, but sporadically.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
astringent	tɕuzuntɕ^{h}yɾ	-	-
naked	nuɕyke:	-	niʃk^{w}ə:

There was an occurrence of the voiced labiodental approximant [ʋ] after a bilabial consonant, but only once.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Xinjiang(Ding 1995: 63)
meal	pʋda/puda	puda	budɑ:	budɑ

(5) /e/ [-LOW, -HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK]
It has only one allophone, the close-mid front unrounded vowel [e], found in both native and loanwords. Compare the word [t^{h}ək^{h}] 'point, dot' with [t^{h}ek^{h}] 'he-goat, seed goat'.

Meaning	Tacheng	Buteha	Sources
he-goat	t^{h}ek^{h}	-	WM teke
match	seriŋk^{h}	-	Russian серенка[serenka]

(6) /i/ [-LOW, +HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK]
It has only one allophone, [i], a close front unrounded vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
thread	çila:z/xila:z	çila:z	xilɑ:s
earth	qadʑir	kadʑir	gɑdʑir
nine	is	Is	is

When [i] occurs in word-initial position, the palatal approximant [j] is added in front of [i], but only sporadically. Anyway, we may have the following variants for word-initial [i] in the words for 'big' and 'flower'.

iɣ çit 'a molar tooth'; jiɣ çit 'id.'; jɪɣ çit 'id.'
ilga 'flower'; jɪlʁa: 'id.'

3.1.1.2 Long vowels

Long vowel phonemes of the Tacheng Dagur dialect are identified below, 6 long vowels both in native and loanwords, and 1 long vowel in Chinese loanwords. Only those 6 long vowel phonemes both for native and loanwords are discussed in this section. The remaining 1 long vowel phoneme in Chinese loanwords is discussed later in the separate section.

	[+Front, -Back]	[-Front, -Back]	[-Front, +Back]
[+High, -Low]	i:	u:	
[-High, -Low]	e:	ə:	o:
[-High, +Low]			a:

(1) [-LOW, +HIGH, -FRONT, +BACK, +LONG] /a:/
[a:] Open central unrounded long vowel.

Occurs everywhere. Many words of the Tacheng dialect with [a:] seem to have developed from Ancient Mongolian -aɣa-, -uɣa-, etc. However, some of them seem not to be related to these VɣV combinations.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
hero	pa:t^{h}ur	-	ba:tur	baɣatur
goat	ima:	nima:	imɑ:i	maɣa(n)

iron pot	$t^hoʁa:$	$t^hɔwa:/t^hɔɣa:$	tuwɑ:	toɣoɣa(n)
five	$t^ha:w$	$t^ha:b$	tɑ:wu	tabu(n)
shaft	a:ɾil	-	allə	aral

A few minimal pairs of the short /a/ and long /a:/ exist, including $tɕ^has$[$tɕ^haz$] 'snow' and $tɕ^ha:s$[$tɕ^ha:z$] 'paper', but not many.

(2) [-LOW, -HIGH, -FRONT, +BACK, +LONG] /o:/

[o:] Close-mid back rounded long vowel

Occurs both in native and loanwords. Most words of the Tacheng Dagur dialect with [o:] seem to have developed from Ancient Mongolian aɣu, uɣu, etc., but some of seem not to be related to VɣV combinations. The long vowel [o:] in [əʒbo:ʃ, əʒpo:ʃ] 'lime' seems to be arbitrary because Russian известь [izvest^j] 'lime' happens to have stress on the first syllable.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
tone	$tɕ^holo:$	$tɕ^holo:$	ʧolo:	čilaɣu(n)
crossbeam	ɲoɾo:	nirɔ:	niro:	niruɣu(n)
moon	saɾo:l	salɔ:r	sɑru:l	saraɣul
brain	oʁw	-	$oɣ^w$	-
lime	əʒbo:ʃ/əʒpo:ʃ	-	-	известь[izvest^j]

[wa] and [wə] appear as variants of /o:/. It may be the case that the long vowel /o:/ is undergoing a break and diphthongization in Tacheng dialect.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
boy	no:no/nwana/nwən	nɔŋ	no:n
iron	$q^hazwə/q^hazo:$	xaso:/$k^haso:$	kaso:
girl	$q^hatwə/q^hat^ho:$	-	kato:

(3) [-LOW, -HIGH, -FRONT, -BACK, +LONG] /ə:/

It has only one allophone, [ə:], a mid central unrounded long vowel. Some of them match with Written Mongolian -ege- combinations, the others do not.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
saddle	əməːl	əməːl/əmələ	əməːl	emegel
fur clothing	təːl	-	dəːl	degel/debel
mane	təːlbər	təːrbəl	dəːlbər	-
hawk	məːŋgəːdi	-	məːŋgəː	-

(4) [-LOW, +HIGH, -FRONT, -BACK, +LONG] /uː/
It has only one allophone, [uː], a close back rounded long vowel. A diphthong [wə] appears as a variant of this long vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
person	xuː/xuə	k^huː	xuː
milk	suː/suə	suː	suː
difficult	$k^hətɕ^hu$ː/$k^hətɕ^hwə$	-	kətʃuː

(5) [-LOW, -HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK, +LONG] /eː/
It occurs in a word's non-initial positions. It has only one allophone, [eː], a close front unrounded long vowel. Minimal pairs with the short vowel /e/ have not been identified in the data.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
fuel (wood)	t^huljeː	-	tuleː
round, full	tukreːkən	-	tukreːkən
to wait	$k^hultɕ^he$ːß^{j}e	-	kultʃəː-

(6) [-LOW, +HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK, +LONG] /iː/
It has only one allophone, [iː], a close front unrounded long vowel. Diphthongs as [ɨj], [ɯj] appear as a variant of this long vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
to blow one's nose	ɲiːß^{j}e	-	ɲiː-
soap	iːz	-	iːs
bird	təɣiː	-	dəɣiː

3.1.1.3 Diphthongs

6 diphthong phonemes /aj, aw, oj, əj, əw, uj/ are proposed for the Tacheng Dagur dialect.[5)]

(1) Falling diphthong /aj/

[aj] Falling diphthong

Occurs mainly in the first syllable of a word. In many cases, [aj] in a Tacheng word corresponds to [aj] or -ayi- in its cognate words in other dialects or Written Mongolian, but not always. The long vowel [ɛː] appears as a variant of this diphthong.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
dangerous	ajməkʰə	-	ɑimoːkeː	ayumqai
scissors	qʰajtɕʰ	xajtɕʰ	kaitʃ	qayiči
fifty	tʰaj	tʰabʲ	taɓ	tabin
thigh	qwaj	-	gʷaj	ɣuy-a
to cry	wajlbʲe	waːl-	wail-	uilaqu
good	sajn/sɛːn	saen	sain	sayin

(2) Falling diphthong /aw/

[aw] Falling diphthong

Most of the Dagur [aw]s are related to Written Mongolian -aɣu-. In ceratin occasions, it would be more precise to transcribe certain segments as [aʊ], [au], or [aʊ]. The long vowel [oː] appears as a variant of this diphthong.

---

5) Zhong (1982: 11) proposed 8 diphthongs for the Buteha dialect, descending diphthongs (前響復元音) /ai, oi, əi, ui, au/ and ascending diphthongs (后響復元音) /ya, ye, əu/. Seong (1983: 147-149) has proposed 6 diphthong phonemes for his consultants, /ai, əi, oi, ui, ao, əu/, all of which are descending or falling diphthongs. Enhebatu (1988: 82-91) proposed 9 diphthong phonemes for the Buteha dialect, /ɑi, oi, əi, ui, au, əu/ for native words, and /yɑ, yɑː, yeː/ for loanwords. Ding (1995: 190) has 6 diphthong phonemes for the Tacheng dialect, /ɑi, əi, ɑu, oi, ui, əu/.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
mountain	awl	aul/aula	aul	aɣul-a(n)
lake	nawɾ	naor/naorə	naur	naɣur
hundred	tɕaw	tɕɔ:	ʤau	ǰaɣ (un)
to sit	so:-/saw-	so:-	sau-	saɣu-

(3) Falling diphthong /oj/
[oj] Falling diphthong
Occurs usually in the initial syllable of a multi-syllabic word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
wet	nojtʰə̃/nojtʰəŋ	neitʰəŋ/nietʰəŋ	noitun
beggar	qojɾəntɕʰ	-	goirəntʃ
radio	ɕojnʤi:	ɕɔinʤi/ɕəinʤi	-
plane	tʰojwa:	-	tuiɣɑ:n
flag	tʰoj	-	-

(4) Falling diphthong /əj/
[əj] Falling diphthong
Occurs in the initial syllable of multi-syllable words or in monosyllabic words. [ej] and [ɨj] occur as variants of [əj].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
to take a husband	xəjlbje	-	xəil-
not yet	əjtʰɨl	-	-
donkey	əjɣə̃	əiɣə/əiɣən/əiɣin	əiɣə:n
ice	mejz	mi:s/meisə	məis
wind	xəjn/xɨjn	xe:/xẽ:	xəin

(5) /əw/ Rising diphthong
[əw] Rising diphthong
Occurs in initial syllable of multi-syllable words or in monosyllabic words. Some examples are given below. Some of the Tacheng Dagur [əw]s correspond to Written Mongolian -egü- or -ebe-. Compare the following examples.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
cloud	əwlən	əwlən	əulən	egülen
shadow	səwdər	sujdərə	səudər	següder
mare	kəw	kəw mɔrʲ	gəu	gegü(n)
horn	əwr	əwrə	əur	eber
grass	əwz	əws	əus	ebesü(n)

(6) Falling diphthong /uj/
[uj] Falling diphthong
Occurs everywhere. [ɯj] and [y:] occur as variants of [uj].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
navel	kʰujz	kʰuizə	kuis
left	solʁuj	sɔlgui	solɣui
cold	kʰujtʰə	kʰuitʰən	kuitun
dew	sɯjdəɾ/sujdəɾ	suidər	suidur
to work	ɯildə:tɕʰiɮje	weiləɣə	wəil xi:-
servant	y:ldə:tɕʰi	-	-
little finger	sy:tʰkʰə	-	sui:tʰkʰə:n xoro:

3.1.2 Consonants

The following 18 consonants are tentatively proposed as the consonant phonemes of the Tacheng dialect: /p, pʰ, t, tʰ, k, kʰ, tɕ, tɕʰ, s, ɕ, x, m, n, ŋ, ɾ, l, w, j/. These phonemes are represented in the transcription below in the vocabulary lists and in the morphological, syntactic, and lexical discussions.

p=b, pʰ=p, t=d, tʰ=t, k=g, kʰ=k, tɕ=ǰ, tɕʰ=č, s=s, ɕ=š, x=x, m=m, n=n, ŋ=ŋ, ɾ=r, l=l, w=w, j=j

Besides these 18 phonemes which appear both in native and loanwords, there are 4 more consonant phonemes which appear only in loanwords. These 4 phonemes are discussed later in the separate section.

Enhebatu (1988: 91-140) proposed 19 simple consonants, 11 palatalized consonants, and 13 labialized consonants as consonant phonemes for the Buteha dialect. Ding (1995: 188-189)

presented 19 simple consonants, 11 palatalized consonants, and 11 labialized consonants. In this book, most of the palatalized consonants or palatal consonants as identified in other Dagur dialects and writings are regarded as the combination of a regular consonant and [j]. Most labialized consonants are regarded as the combination of a regular consonant and [w].

Consonant phonemes

	Bilabial	Dental-Alveolar	Alveolar	Alveolar-Palatal	Palatal	Velar
Plosive	p, p^h	t, t^h				k, k^h
Affricate				tɕ, $tɕ^h$		
Fricative			s	ɕ		x
Nasal	m	n				ŋ
Flap		ɾ				
Approximant	w				j	
Lateral Approximant		l				

(1) /p/ bilabial plosive

[p] Voiceless bilabial plosive

Occurs in word-initial and final positions. Although Seong (1983) did not discuss consonants, it seems that he regarded this sound as a voiceless consonant, as we see /b/ and [b̥] in his transcription. Enhebatu (1988: 91) also regarded it as a voiceless unaspirated bilabial consonant (雙脣不送氣清塞音) although he used [b] for his transcription.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
elder brother's wife	pərɣə	-	bərɣən
we	pɛt	-	bed
work	aləp	-	ɑlbə
smooth	$pjalt^hk^ha$	-	ɑldkɑ:

[b] Voiced bilabial plosive
Occurs after consonants [l], [m], [n], and [ŋ].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
oar	χalbje	-	xɑlb̥
saliva	ɲombuz	ɲɔmusə	ɲombus
cadre	ka:nbu	kanbur	ganbul
fart	χo:ŋbuz	ungɣasu	xoŋgus

[ß] Voiced bilabial fricative
Occurs in non-initial positions of a word except after [l], [m], [n], and [ŋ].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
situation	arße	-	ɑrbun
to go astray	t^hu:rßje	-	-

Enhebatu (1988: 91) observed that a voiceless unaspirated bilabial consonant occurs in word-initial position, and before or after the consonants /l/ and /m/, while voiceless fricatives (清擦音, [ß] in his transcription) mostly occurs elsewhere in Buteha. In our data, the voiceless bilabial fricative [ɸ] also occurs as a variant of [ß].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
teacher	səɸə/səßu	səp/səbu/səbə	səb
pupil	ɕɛɸj/ɕæɸj	ɕəbə/ɕəbi/ɕep	ʃeb̥

(2) /p^h/ Aspirated bilabial plosive
[p^h] Voiceless aspirated bilabial plosive
Occurs in the non-final positions of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
to destroy	p^həŋɕißje	-	-
to swim	ump^{h}aßje	xump^{h}aɣə	xumpa:-
ball	p^holje:	-	po:le:

(3) /t/ Voiceless dental-alveolar plosive
[t] Voiceless dental-alveolar plosive
Occurs in the initial and the final positions of a word or a syllable.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
half	qʰoltoχ	xaltəɣ	kaltəɣ/kontuɣʷ
younger sibling	təw	təw	dəu
elm	χajlt	-	kails

[d] Voiced dental-alveolar plosive
Occurs in the medial position of a syllable.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
now	ədəː	ədəː	ədəː
high	xundur	undur	xundur

(4) /tʰ/ Voiceless dental-alveolar aspirated plosive
[tʰ] Voiceless dental-alveolar aspirated plosive
Occurs in any position.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
heaven	tʰəŋgər	tʰəŋgər	təŋgər
writing	pitʰəɣ	pitʰəɣ/pitʰɣə	bitʰəɣ
gold	altʰ	altʰ	alt

(5) /k/ Voiceless velar plosive
It has 6 allophones: [k], [g], [ɣ], [q], [ɢ], and [ʁ]. All of these allophones are represented as /g/ in the vocabulary lists.

[k] Voiceless velar plosive
Occurs in the initial position of a [-back] vowel word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
house	kər/kɨr	kər	gəɾ	WM ger
stomach	kudʑe:	kudʑə:	gudʒə:	WM güjege

[ɣ] Voiced velar fricative
Occurs in the non-initial positions of a word except after [ŋ] in a word including [-back] vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
to die	uɣuɓje	uɣusə̃ (died)	uɣʷ-
thief	xwaləɣ	xʷalɣə	xʷaləɣ

[g] Voiced velar plosive
Occurs after [ŋ] in a word including [-back] vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
heaven	tʰəŋgər/tʰəŋgər	tʰəŋgər	təŋgər
light	xuŋgwə:kʰə̃	xuŋgun	xuŋgə:kən

[q] Voiceless uvular plosive
Occurs in syllable-initial position of a word which includes a [+back] vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
fire	qal	kal	gɑl
widower	qaʨqa xu:	-	gɑʃkɑ: bəj

[ɢ] Voiced uvular plosive
Occurs after [ŋ] in a [+back] vowel word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
pond	qʰwaŋɢra	-	-
to fall into	ʨo:ŋɢoɓe	-	-

[ʁ] Voiced uvular fricative

Occurs in the non-initial positions of a word which includes [+back] vowel except after [ŋ].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
fish	tɕaʁos	tɕaɣəs/tɕaks	ʤaus
beard	saʁəl	saɣɨl	sɑɣəl
deer	poʁ	pɔɣə	boɣʷ
wave	tolʁjɛ	tʊlɣə	dolɣeːn

(6) /k^h/ Voiceless velar aspirated plosive

[k^h] Voiceless velar aspirated plosive

Occurs in a [-back] vowel word. Word-final appearances of [k^h] do exist but, is rare in our data.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
power	$k^hutɕ^h$	$k^hutɕ^hi$	kutʃ
sister	$ək^hə$ː	$ək^hə$ː	əkəː
child	$k^həwk^h$	$k^huk^hu/k^huk^hə$	kəkʷ

[q^h] Voiceless uvular aspirated plosive

Occurs in a [+back] vowel word. It seems that our data is not big enough to identify a word-final appearance of [q^h].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
chicken	q^haq^hraː	xak^hraː/xakra	kakrɑː
salt	q^hat^haː	xat^haː/k^hata	kataː

(7) /tɕ/ Voiceless alveolar-palatal affricate

[tɕ] Voiceless alveolar-palatal affricate

Occurs in the initial positions of a word or syllable. This allophone does not appear word-finally in the data.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
young	tɕalo:	tɕalɔ:	ʤalo:
song	tɕa:ndal	tɕa:ndal	ʤa:ndɑ:l

[ʤ] Voiced alveolar-palatal affricate
Occurs in non-initial positions of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
land	qaʤir	kaʤir	gɑʤir
year before last year	orʤɣõ:ɔ	ʤiŋgə/ɔʤiɣə	-6)
the day after tomorrow	tɕʰa:ʤ	tɕʰa:ʤ	ʧɑ:ʤ

(8) /tɕʰ/ Voiceless aspirated alveolar-palatal affricate
[tɕʰ] Voiceless aspirated alveolar-palatal affricate
Occurs in any position of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
stone	tɕʰolo:	tɕʰolo:	ʧolo:	čilaɣu(n)
father	atɕʰa:	atɕʰa:	ɑʧɑ:	-
beggar	qojrəntɕʰ	-	gojrəntʃ	ɣuyilinči

It is de-aspirated when preceded by an aspirated consonant but sporadically. Compare following examples.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
mouse	atɕʰiqtɕʰẽn	atɕʰiktɕʰa	ɑʧiktʃɑ:n	-
school	tʰɛtɕokʰo/tʰaɕikʰu	-	taʃkʷ	Manchu tacikū

(9) /s/ Voiceless alveolar fricative
[s] Voiceless alveolar fricative
Occurs in syllable-initial position. When it is followed by a voiceless segment, it is maintained as [s]. In a loan word, it may occur in non-initial positions.

6) Enhebatu et al. (1984: 146) has /kətʃiɣ/ for this word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
moon	saro:l	salɔ:r	sɑru:l
Septemberistər	sar	istərə sar	-
weasel	tɕʰa:miskan	-	-
lock	josoqʰo	-	-
company	kuŋs	-	-

[z] Voiced alveolar fricative
Found in non-initial positions of a word. This phenomenon does not occur in Qiqihaer and Buteha dialects.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
tiger	tazəʁ	-	tasəɣ
bone	jaz	jes/jesɨ	jas

(10) /ɕ/ Voiceless alveolar-palatal fricative
[ɕ] Voiceless alveolar-palatal fricative
Occurs in any position of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
ability	ɕadəl	-	ʃadəl	čidal
spa	arɕa:n	arɕan	ɑrʃiən[7]	rašiyan
elder sister	əkʰiɕ	əkʰitɕʰ	əktʃ	egeči

(11) /x/ Voiceless velar fricative
[x] Voiceless velar fricative
Occurs in a [-back] vowel words.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
wind	xəjn	xe:/xẽ:	xəin
awl	ɕəwx	-	ʃəuɣʷ

[χ] Voiceless uvular fricative
Occurs in a [+back] vowel words.

7) Sun Zhu et al. (1990: 119). '溫泉'

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
star	χot	xɔdɨ	xod
pig	qaχ	kaɣə	gɑɣə
maternal uncle	naχtɕʰoː	naktɕʰɔ	nɑutʃoː

(12) /m/ Voiced bilabial nasal consonant

Enhebatu (1988) has /m/, /m̩/, and /mʷ/ and Ding (1995) has /m/ and /mj/. We have 3 or 4 [mw]s at most, but there is no minimal pair for [m]~[mw] or [m]~[mʷ] in our data. Furthermore, the sound is less that of [mʷ], that is, /m/ with labial coloring, but close to [mw] or rather [mu], which is the string of [m] and [w] or [m] and [u].

[m] Voiced bilabial nasal consonant

Occurs at any position.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
whip	minaː	-	minɑː
saddle	əməːl	əməːl/əmələ	əməːl
eight	najm	naim	nɑim
three	mwət/moːt	mɔːt	moːd

(13) /n/ Voiced dental-alveolar nasal consonant

[n] Voiced dental-alveolar nasal consonant

Occurs in any position except before a front vowel, historical or present.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
sun	naɾ	nar	nɑr
mist	mana	maniŋ/manən	mɑnən
wind	xəjn	xəjn	xəin

[ɲ] Voiced palatal nasal consonant

Occurs in non-final positions before a front vowel, historical or present.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
last year	ɲidã	nidan	nidɑːŋ
the youngest child	ɲãlãqʰã/jalaq	-	-
baggage	qʰoŋər	-	-

Our consultant dropped the final [-n] quite often. In that case, the vowel before the final [-n] is nasalized by more than chance frequency, and it may become long in some cases.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
last year	nidãː	nidan	nidaːŋ
mouse	atɕʰiqtɕʰɛ̃n	atɕʰiktɕʰa	ɑtʃiktʃɑːn
son-in-law	xurgə̃	xuryin	xuryun

(14) /ŋ/ Voiced velar nasal consonant
[ŋ] Voiced velar nasal
Occurs in non-initial positions of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
heaven	tʰəŋgər	tʰəŋgər	təŋgər
big	putuŋ	puduːŋ	buduːn
slow	qwajdaŋ	kʷajdan	gʷaidɑːn

Our consultant dropped final [-ŋ] quite often. In that case, the vowel before the final [-ŋ] is nasalized more than chance frequency, and it may become long in some cases.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
lame (person)	toɣulə̃ː [xuː]	-	doɣʷlun
rifle	mjaotɕʰɛ̃ː	-	mautʃan

(15) /ɾ/ Voiced dental-alveolar flap
It has only one allophone, [ɾ], which is transcribed as /r/ in the vocabulary lists and morpho-syntactic discussions.

[ɾ] Voiced dental-alveolar flap
Occurs in non-initial positions of a word.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
sun	naɾ	nar	nar
Russia	oɾuz	-	ors
place	qadʑir	kadʑir	gɑdʑir

The voiced dental-alveolar trill [r] occurs sporadically in word-final position as a variant of [ɾ].

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
weapon	aʁor	-	-
child	utɕʰikʰər	itɕʰiɣər	utʃiːkər
thief	caɣər	-	-

The voiced dental-alveolar approximant [ɹ] also occurs, although very rare.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
weather	tʰəŋgərə aɹßən	tʰeŋgəri aːrbuŋ	tʰəŋgəriː arbun

(16) /w/ Voiced rounded labial approximant
[w] Voiced rounded labial approximant
Occurs word-initially and inter-vocally. It occurs once in word-final position. Some [w]s seem to be the result of the o-breaking and the u-breaking.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	WM
clothes	waɾkʰəl	warkʰil/warkʰilə	warkəl	-
badger	xəwəɾ	xəwər	xəwəːr	-
five	tʰaːw	tʰaːp	tɑːwu	tabun
rain	χwaːɾ/ʍaːɾ	xʷara/xʷara	xʷɑr	qura
to rain	waɾ-	warbe	war-	or-

(17) /j/ Voiced palatal approximant
[j] Voiced palatal approximant
Occurs in word- or syllable-initial position.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha
bone	jaz	jes/jesɨ	jas
wave	tolʁjɛ	tulga/tulɣə	dolɣeːn
cousin	ujəl	-	ujəːl

(18) /l/ Voiced dental-alveolar lateral approximant
[l] Voiced dental-alveolar lateral approximant
Occurs in any position.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Sources
leaf	larʧʰ	larʧʰi	larʧ	WM nabči (?)
earth	palaʁa	palgə	bɑləɣ	-
fire	qal	kal	gɑl	WM ɣal
fodder	ljaw	-	-	liào (料)
firewood	tʰulje:	-	tuleː	WM tüliy-e(n)
anklebone[8]	poljokʰe	-	boloːki	-

3.1.3 Loan segments

There are certain vowels and consonants found only in loanwords, which might have not been fully Dagurized.

3.1.3.1 Vowel segments

(1) [-LOW, +HIGH, -FRONT, -BACK] /ɨ/

It appears in some Chinese loanwords which have become Dagurized, perhaps not fully. [ɨ] appears as a variant of allophone of /ə/ in native Tacheng Dagur words. But the /ɨ/ presented here is a phoneme.

8) Our question was 踝子骨[huáizigǔ] 'anklebone' while Enhebatu et al. (1984: 81)'s /boloːki/ '髌骨' is 'knee bone'.

[ɨ] Close central unrounded vowel

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
dictionary	$ts^hɨd^jɛ̃$	-	-	cídiǎn (詞典)

[ɪ] Near-close near-front unrounded vowel
Found in word-final position of a Chinese loanword.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
magazine	zaj	-	-	zázhì (雜誌)

(2) [-LOW, +HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK, +ROUNDED] /y/
As a phoneme, this vowel seems to appear in Chinese loanwords. It has only one allophone, [y], a close front rounded vowel.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
trip	lyɕiŋ	-	-	lǚxíng (旅行)
police station	tɕiŋtɕʰadʑy	-	-	jǐngchájú (警察局)

The vowel [y:], a close front rounded long vowel, appears as a variant of [y]. The vowel was originally in the third tone (第三聲) but the vowel [y] in the first syllable of /lyɕiŋ/ 'trip' was also in the third tone in Chinese. In whichever cases, we do not have enough examples.
It becomes long sometimes.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
match	$tɕ^hy{:}dən$	-	$tʃy{:}dun$	qǔdēng (取燈)

(3) [-LOW, +HIGH, +FRONT, -BACK, +ROUND, +LONG] /y:/
It has only one allophone [y:], a close front rounded vowel, and is found in loanwords.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Source
iron	$y{:}t^h$	-	wəit	Chinese (熨頭)yùndou
to do ironing	$y{:}t^hlə$	-	wəitlə:	

3.1.3.2 Consonantal segments

(1) /f/ Voiceless labio-dental fricative

Occurs in loanwords. It may occur initially, medially, and finally.

Meaning	Tacheng	Buteha	Source
airplane	feidɕi	-	Chinese fēijī (飛機)
official	(ədɕəŋ) hafən	xɑfən	Manchu hafan
doctor	tajf	-	Chinese dàifū (大夫)

(2) /z/ Voiced alveolar fricative

[z] Voiced alveolar fricative

Found in Chinese loanwords. It is different from the consonant [z], which is an allophone of the Tacheng Dagur dialect's /s/.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
cushions	ɕi:z	-	-	xízi (席子)
stool	təŋz	-	-	dèngzi (凳子)

(3) /ʒ/ Voiced postalveolar fricative

[ʒ] Voiced postalveolar fricative

Found in Russian loanwords. But we have only one example.

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Russian
lime	əʒbo:ʃ/əʒpo:ʃ	-	-	известь[izvestʲ]

(4) /h/ Voiceless glottal fricarive

[h] Voiceless glottal fricative

Meaning	Tacheng	Qiqihaer	Buteha	Chinese
Seoul	hantɕʰəŋ	-	-	hànchéng (漢城)
peanut	hwasəŋ hwaɕəŋ	-	-	huāshēng (花生)

3.2 Morphological description

The following parts of speech are identified in the data: noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb, adverb, postposition, particle, interjection.

3.2.1 Noun

Number, case, reflexive possessiveness, and personal possessiveness are marked in the nouns. There is no number agreement between any noun and its attribute or predicate. Grammatical gender does not exist in this dialect, as is the case in the whole of the Mongolian languages.

3.2.1.1 Number

Plurality is principally marked by suffixing /-dul/ to the base noun.

(1) ǰuŋgwə xuː-in ~ ǰuŋgwə xuː-dul-in
China person-3 China person-pl-3
'a Chinese person'~'Chinese persons'

(2) nək ərgun xuː-ti nək əmgun xuː ~ ərgun xuː-dul-ti əmgun xuː-dul
one man-com one woman ~ man-pl-com
woman-pl
'a man and a woman'~'men and women'

Plurality is also marked by suffixing /-nur/, but this is found only several times in the data. It has an allomorph [-nər].

(3) biː tačoko-d guč-dul-ti-jaː nəkənd sor-ǰ aː-w
I school-dl friend-pl-com-ref together study-con be-pre
'I am studying at school together with my friends.'

(4) biː tačoko-d guč-nur-ti-jaː nəkənd sor-ǰ aː-w
I school-dl friend-pl-com-ref together study-con be-pre

'I am studying at school together with my friends.'

(5) bi: ənd aka: dəw-nər-ə:
I here older brother younger sibling-pl-ref
uǰugə-ni ir-səŋ-bi
see-vni-aim come-pas-1
'I came here to see my siblings.'

Plurality is not marked when it is already apparent by other means. For example, we have /xojor/ 'two' and /bəra:n/ 'many' as attributes of the nouns in the constructions below.

(6) xojor morj
two horse
'two horses'

(7) bəra:n gurun
many country
'many countries'

The following responses of the consultant must be errors in that ① the plural marker /-dul/ appeared after the comitative case marker /-ti/ in (7), ② the comitative marker /-ti/ appeared in *səbtidul of (7), where it should not appear, ③ *soročtiti in (8) is missing a plural marker, but has a surplus comitative marker.

(8) *soroč-ti-dul səbu-ti-dul
pupil-com-pl teacher-com-pl
'pupils and teachers'

(9) *soroč-ti-ti səbu-dul
pupil-com-com teacher-pl
'pupils and teachers'

3.2.1.2 Case

The following cases are identified in the data. Case is marked by suffixing grammatical morphemes to the noun base.

Case	Marker
Nominative (nom)	-ø
Accusative (acc)	-ø, -iː, -g
Genitive (gen)	-iː
Dative-Locative (dl)	-d (-t)
Ablative (abl)	-aːr (-jaːr, əːr, -jəːr, -oːr, -joːr)
Instrumental (ins)	-aːr (-oːr)
Comitative (com)	-ti
Directional (dir)	(-d), (-aːr), (ǰur)

3.2.1.2.1 Nominative

It is the subject of the sentence. It is marked by zero suffix.

(1) morj xawl-bje
horse run-pre
'The horse runs.'

(2) xojor xuː irˑ-səŋ
two person come-pas
'Two people came.'

(3) xwar ədəː baj-səŋ
rain now stop-pas
'The rain has stopped now.'

3.2.1.2.2 Accusative

The accusative case is marked by suffixing /-iː/, which has the same phonological form as the genitive case marker. There is another accusative case marker, /-g/. The accusative case marking is not necessary when the object is indefinite.

(1) udiš durəldə-ǰ ačir-səŋ ǰuləːn-iː biː
yesterday buy-con bring-pas book-acc I
xolaː-ǰ aː-w-ka

read-con be-pre-mood
'I am reading a book which I bought yesterday.'

(2) ənd gal čigi-j toga:-d buda:-g
here fire ignite-con kettle-dl meal-acc
xi:-ja
make-vol
'Let us start here a fire and cook rice in the kettle.'

(3) bi: os ačir-səŋ-bi
I water-acc bring-pas-1
'I brought water.'

(4) bi: do:-jo:r ǰagos uǰu-səŋ-bi
I river-abl fish-acc see-pas-1
'I saw fish in the river.'

3.2.1.2.3 Genitive

The genitive case is marked by suffixing /-i:/, which has the same phonological form as the accusative case marker /-i:/.

(1) gax-i: mjaga
pig-gen meat
'pork'

(2) təŋgər-i: dwar-i: nəktər-in
heaven-gen below-gen first-3
'World champion' (literally 'the first one under the heaven')

(3) šinǰaŋ ojgor-i: wə:r-d-ə: dasagə gaǰir-in
Xinjiang Uyghur-gen self-dl-ref govern place-3
'Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region' (literally 'Their Self Governing Region of the Xinjiang Uyghurs')

3.2.1.2.4 Dative-Locative

The dative and the locative cases are marked by the suffix /-d/, which are identical in phonological form. It has an allomorph [-t], but we have too few examples to judge the phonological conditions of its occurrence.

(1) bi: bəːǰiŋ-d tur-səŋ
I Beijing-dl born-pas
'I was born in Beijing.'
(2) tər gaǰir-t ba bas iči-ba
that place-dl we also go-1pl
'We will also go to that place.'
(3) gər-t-šin xəd aŋgəl bje
house-dl-2 how many people be-pre
'How many people are there in your home?'
(4) bi: əwəː-d-əː bitəg xolaː-ǰ uku-səŋ-b
I mother-dl-ref book read-con give-pas-1
'I read a book for my mother.'
(5) bi: dəw-d-əː nəkən kakra barilga-səŋ-bi
I younger brother-dl-ref one chicken to let seize-pas-1
'I let my younger brother kill a chicken.'

3.2.1.2.5 Ablative

The ablative case is marked by suffixing /-aːr/. It has allomorphs [-jaːr], [-əːr], [-jəːr], [-oːr], and [-joːr]. The allomorphs [-jaːr] and [-jəːr] come after the noun base ending in vowel. [-(j)aːr], [-(j)əːr], [-(j)oːr] seem to be decided by front-back vowel harmony and labial attraction.

(1) morj-dul kəːr tal-aːr xaǰir-səŋ
horse-pl steppe-abl come back-pas
'Horses came back from the steppe.'
(2) tər morj-oːr waːn-daŋ
he horse-abl fall-pas
'He fell from the horse.'
(3) təd mur-əːr kəːr tal-d gwarbən čag jaw-səŋ
they water-abl steppe-dl three hour go-pas
'They went three hours from the water to the steppe.'
(4) ən nawr tər nawr-əːr bas ig
this lake that lake-abl also big
'This lake is bigger than that lake.'

(5) akaː-in dəw-əːr-in gwarbən nas ig
elder brother-3 younger brother-abl-3 three age big
'The elder brother is three years older than the younger brother.'

(6) biː tər-iː akaː-jaːr-in sorlə-m sajn
I he-gen elder brother-abl-3 studying-1 good
'I learn better than his elder brother.'

(7) sardwəː-šin oros-oːr ir-səŋ-jə uweː
grandmother-3 Russia-abl come-pas-int no
moŋɢul-oːr ir-səŋ-jə
Mongolia-abl come-pas-int
'Did your grandmother come from Russia or Mongolia?'

3.2.1.2.6 Instrumental

The instrumental case is marked by suffixing /-ːar/. [-oːr] is identified as an allomorph of /-aːr/. [-oːr] seems to appear after noun bases which include the labial vowel /o/ or /oː/, but we do not have enough examples. As a whole, the instrumental case marker may be in the same phonological form with the ablative case marker.

(1) min ačaː-m moːd-oːr širəː xiː-ǰ-bje
my father-1 wood-ins table do-con-be-pre
'My father is making a table with wood'

(2) šiː gar-aːr-aː buː barj
you hand-ins-ref neg hold
'You do not touch with your hand!'

3.2.1.2.7 Comitative

The comitative case is marked by suffixing /-ti/ to the noun base.

(1) biː guč-ti-jəː ičiǰ bitəg sor-səŋ-b
I friend-go-ref with book study-pas-1
'I went and read a book with my friend.'

(2) bi: əmgə-ti-jə: xojol ǰešgən-i: xola:-səŋ-ba
I wife-com-ref two together letter-acc read-pas-1pl
'I read a letter together with my wife.'

3.2.1.2.8 Directional

The directional case, if it exists in this dialect, seems to be marked by several means: ① suffixing a marker phonologically identical to the dative-locative case marker to the noun base, ② using a noun which denotes direction, ③ suffixing a marker phonologically identical to the instrumental case marker to the noun base.

(1) ən tərəg ma:n ail-d iči-ǰ-bje
this vehicle our village-dir go-con-be-pre
'This car is going to our village.'
(2) morj-dul kə:r tal-i: ǰur xawl-ǰ iči-ǰ-bje
horse-pl steppe-gen direction run-con go-con-be-pre
'Horses are running toward the steppe.'
(3) bi: mə:n tərgul-ə:r tondokun jaw-ǰ xaǰir-səŋ-bi
I this very way-dir straight go-con come back-pas-1
'I went by this way and came straight back.'

3.2.1.3 Reflexive possessive

Reflexiveness possessiveness is marked by suffixing /-a:/ after the case marker. Thus it is not marked on noun in the nominative case. The suffix has allomorphs [-ja:], [-ə:], and [-jə:].

(1) ən kəwk-in nid-in əwə:-jə: nid-in dəmbəl wajr
this child-3 eye-3 mother-ref eye-3 very near
'This child's eyes are very similar to his/her own mother's eyes.'
(2) bi: buda: id-ǰ bar-ǰ šid-a: oga:-səŋ-bi
I meal eat-con tooth-ref clean-pas-1
'I finished eating a meal and cleaned my own teeth.'
(3) bi: əmgə-d-ə: ǰešgən uku-səŋ-b

I wife-dl-ref letter-acc give-pas-1
'I gave (=wrote) a letter to my wife.'

(4) bi: əmgə-ti-jə: xojol ǰešgən-i: xola:-səŋ-ba
I wife-com-ref two together letter-acc read-pas-1pl
'I read a letter together with my wife.'

(5) bi: gər-t-ə: xarj-gə-d-a: tərgul-ə:r gja-d ičital-dəŋ-b
I house-dl-ref return-pas-dl-ref road-ins go-pas-1
'I went to the market on my way home.'

3.2.1.4 Personal possessive

The personal possessiveness is marked by suffixing the following contracted forms of the personal pronouns to the noun base before the case markers. The second person plural suffix /-tan/ has a variant [-dan]~[-daŋ].

1st		2nd		3rd	
sg	pl	sg	pl	sg	pl
-m	-man	-šin	-tan	-in	-in

(1) mini: ger-m ajl-i: xo: dwand-in
my house-1 village-gen exactly center-3
'My house is at the center of the village.'

(2) ma:n ajl-man dur-in dəmbəl nanda:kan
our village-1 appearance-3 very beautiful
'Our village is very beautiful.' (literally 'Its appearance of our village is very beautiful.')

(3) tan ajl-tan jo:kəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur people be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'

(4) šin tačoko-šin xa:n bje
your school-2 where be-pre
'Where is your school?'

(5) ba ir-gə-tan orti-ǰ a:-ba
we come-imp-2pl wait-con be-1pl

'We welcome you!' (literally 'We are welcoming your coming.')

(6) šinǰaŋ ojgor-iː wəːr-d-əː dasa-gə gaǰir-in
Xinjiang Uyghur-gen self-dl-ref govern-vni place-3
'Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region' (literally 'Their Self Governing Region of the Xinjiang Uyghurs')

3.2.2 Adjective

Adjectives are used as attributes of a noun or a predicate of a sentence. The noun in comparison, takes the ablative case marker, but adjectives do not change their form. /ən/ and /tər/ are used as demonstrative adjectives as we see in examples (3), (4), (5) and (6).

(1) maːn ajl-man dur-in dəmbəl nandaːkan.
our village-1pl appearance-3 very beautiful
'Our village is very beautiful.' (literally '*Its appearance of our village is very beautiful.')

(2) ig kəwk-šin xədiː bol-daŋ
big child-2 how many become-pas
'How old is your big child?'

(3) akaː-in dəw-əːr-in gwarbən nas ig
elder brother-3 younger sibling-abl-3 three age big
'The elder brother is three years older than the younger brother.'

(4) ən nawr tər nawr-əːr bas ig
this lake that lake-abl also big
'This lake is bigger than that lake.'

(5) ən tərəg maːn ail-d iči-ǰ-bje
this vehicle our village-dir go-con-be-pre
'This car is going to our village.'

(6) tər ǰuləːn naməd bje
that book I-dl be-pre
'I have that book.' (literally 'That book is at me.')

3.2.3 Numeral

3.2.3.1 The numerals in attribute and cardinal forms

Except /xojor/ 'two', the native Tacheng Dagur numerals seem to have "the latent -n" in their underlying forms, which appears irregularly on the surface when they are used as an attribute. Compare the underlined forms presented in the phonetic level.

(1a) təd mur-əːr kəːr tal-d ***gwarbən*** čag jaw-səŋ
they water-abl steppe-dl three hour go-pas
'They went three hours from the water to the steppe.'

(1b) xojor ərgun xuː bje nək əmgun xuː bje
two man be one woman be
qwarbə učikər bje
three children be
'There are two men, one woman, (and) three children (in my home).'

(2a) gurun ***tʰum*** nas nasl-təga
country ten thousand age live long-opt
'Cheers for our nation! (literally 'Live ten thousand years long, (my) country!')

(2b) ***tʰumuŋ*** xuluː bojgən bje
ten thousand over household cop
'There are more than ten thousand households.'

Unlike most Mongolian languages outside of Russia, the word for 'zero' is a Russian loanword in this dialect. Unlike most Mongolian languages in China and Mongolia, numerals over a hundred thousand, that is, 100,000, are not Tibetan borrowings but combinations of Mongolian words made by multiplying 10,000 with the words for ten, hundred, thousand, ten thousand, etc.

Thus the numerals in attribute and the cardinal numerals in the data may be represented as below.

Meaning	Attribute forms with final /-n/	Cardinal form
0	-	nolj
1	-	nək
2	-	xojor
3	gwarbən	gwarəb
4	durbən	durub
5	ta:wən	ta:w
6	-	ǰurgo:
7	-	dolo:
8	-	najm
9	isən	is
10	xarbən	xarəb
11	-	xarbən nək
12	-	xarbən xojor
13	-	xarbən gwarəb
14	-	xarbən durub
15	xarbən ta:wən	xarbən ta:w
16	-	xarbən ǰurgo:
17	-	xarbən dolo:
18	-	xarbən najm
19	-	xarbən is
20	xorjn	xorj
21	-	xorjn nək
30	-	goč
40	-	duč
50	tajn	taj
60	ǰaran	ǰar
70	dalan	dal
80	najn	naj
90	irən	ir
100	-	ǰaw
200	-	xojor ǰaw
300	-	gwarbən ǰaw
480	durbən ǰaw najn	-

1000	-	mjaːŋga
2000	-	xojor mjaːŋga
3000	-	gwarbən mjaːŋga
3890	gwarbən mjaːŋga najn ǰaw irən	-
10,000	tumun	tum
100,000	-	xarbən tum
1,000,000	-	ǰaw tum
10,000,000	-	mjaːŋga tum
100,000,000	-	tumun tum
1,000,000,000	-	xarbən tumun tum
10,000,000,000	-	ǰaw tumun tum

3.2.3.2 Ordinal numerals

"Ordinality" is marked by suffixing /-daːr/ to the cardinal forms. This suffix has an allomorph [-dəːr] which comes after [-back] vowel words. The following ordinal numerals were identified in the data

first	nəkdəːr
second	xojordaːr
third	qwarəbdaːr
fourth	durubdəːr
fifth	taːwdaːr
tenth	xarəbdaːr
eleventh	xarəb nəkdəːr
twentieth	xorjdaːr
thirtieth	gočdaːr
fortieth	dučdəːr

The year was expressed by ordinal numbers. Among the seven days of the week, Monday was expressed by ordinal number. Compare (2a) and (2b).

(1) nək mjaːŋga isən ǰaw ǰaran gwarəb-daːr xoːn
one thousand nine hundred sixty third-ord year
'The year 1963.'

(2a) šiŋči nəkdəːr udur
week first day
'Monday'

(2b) šiŋči xojor
week two
'Tuesday'

3.2.3.3 Collective numerals

Only one collective numeral is identified in the entire data. It seems that collectivity is marked by suffixing /-l/ to the numeral base, and the /-r/ is dropped in the surface form. Thus, the underlying form in the collective is /xojorl/, and the surface representation is /xojol/.

(1) xojo-l xəwd-ǰ tər nəkən xuː-iː tarkə-səŋ-ba
two-col cooperate-con that one person-acc beat-pas-1pl
'Two together cooperated and beat that one person.'

(2) biː dəw-ti-jəː xojo-l gər
I younger sibling-com-ref two-col house
tal-dəŋ-ba
build-pas-1pl
'I built a house with my own younger brother.'

3.2.3.4 Distributive numerals

Only the following examples of the distributive numerals are identified in the data. Distributive numerals are marked by suffixing /-tin/ to the numeral base (cardinal form), and the repetition of the first numeral base (cardinal form). Example (3) was the consultant's reply to the question of 'two each (各兩個)' but it may be a mistake of our consultant. It would not necessary to present the underlying forms as (1a) here.

(1) nək-tin nək
one-dis one
'one each'

(1a) nək-tin nək
one-dis one
'one each'

(2) gwarəb-tin gwarəp
three-dis three
'three each'

(3) nək-tin xojor
one-dis two
'two each'

3.2.3.5 Approximate numerals

Approximativeness is marked by suffixing the ablative case marker /-a:r/ to the numeral and putting a word with an approximate meaning after it. The ablative case marker may not be compulsory. When the ablative case marker is suffixed, the base of the numeral tends to be in the cardinal form. Although we do not have example of usage, words which have meanings of 'about, approximately', such as /koklin/ 'about, approximately', /solguj bəra:n/ 'about, approximately' are highly expected to have functions similar to that of /xulu:/ 'more', kurugə 'reaching', etc.

(1) xorj-o:r xulu:
twenty-abl more
'over twenty'

(2) goč-o:r xulu:
thirty-abl more
'over thirty'

(3) duč-ə:r xulu:
forty-abl more
'over forty'

(4a) tan ajl-tan joːkəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur people be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'
(4b) mjaːŋga kurugə xuː bje
thousand reach people be-pre
'Almost one thousand.'
(5a) ajl-tan xədən bojgən bje
village-2pl how many household be-pre
'How many houses are there in your village?
(5b) tumun xuluː bojgən bje
ten thousand over household be-pre
'There are more than ten thousand households.'

3.2.3.6 Fraction

Fractions are expressed by the construction "the denominator in genitive form + the numerator in the third person possessive form", as is the case in other Mongolian languages. Personal possessive suffixes on the numerator may not be a mandatory factor.

(1) gwarbə-iː nək-in
three-gen one-3
one third
(2) durub-iː nək-in
four-gen one-3
'one fourth'
(3) ǰurgoː-iː xojor-in
six-fen two-3
'two sixth'

3.2.3.7 Multiple numerals

Only /madən/ 'time' is identified in the usage data. The consultant answered /dabkər/ for Chinese 倍 [bèi], but it is not certain if he meant only 'double' or 'times' too.

(1) nək madən
one time
'one time, once'
(2) xojor madən
two time
'two times, twice'
(3) gwarbən madən
three time
'three times, thrice'

3.2.3.8 Pseudo-numeral words

There are words which are not exactly numerals but have certain functions of the numeral words, including /koltox/ 'half', dabgər 'double', ǰuːru 'pair', /gub/ 'whole, entire', /xaw-jarən/ 'all, altogether', /bəraːn/ 'many, a lot', /očok/ 'few, little'.

3.2.3.9 Numerals and interrogative pronouns

The following interrogative pronouns, including /xəd/ 'how many', /xəddəːr/ 'which one (in series)', jokə 'what', jokəd 'how many', demand information in numerals.

(1a) gər-t-šin xəd aŋgəl bje
house-dl-2 how many people be-pre
'How many people are there in your home?'
(1b) xojor ərgun xuː bje nək əmgun xuː bje
two man be-pre one woman be-pre
gwarbən učikər bje
three children be-pre
'There are two men, one woman, three children (in my home).'
(2a) tan ajl-tan joːkəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur people be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'
(2b) mjaːŋga kuru-gə xuː bje
thousand reach-vni people be-pre
'Almost one thousand.'

3.2.3.10 More than and less than

We may speculate that the expression 'more than' and 'less than' are constructed by "numeral-ablative case marker + dəːgdəː 'above'" and "numeral-ablative marker + dwargdaː 'below'" through the following information in the data.

(1) tər-əːr dəːgdəː
that-abl over
'more than that'

(2) tər-əːr dwargdaː
that-abl below
'less than that'

3.2.4 Pronoun

3.2.4.1 Personal pronoun

There seems to be no basic difference between case marking suffixes of pronouns nouns. However, the stems of the personal pronouns are changed when they are not in the nominative case.

	1st			2nd		3rd	
	sg	pl		sg	pl	sg	pl
		Exc	Inc				
nom	biː	ba	bad	šiː	ta	tər	təd
acc	na-miː/naməj	maːniː	badniː	šamiː	taniː	təriː	tədniː
gen	miniː	maːn	-	šiniː	tanːi	təriː	tədniː
dl	naməd	maːnd	badənd	šaməd	-	tərənd	tədənd
abl	namaːr	-	-	-	-	-	-
ins	-	-	-	-	-		-
com	-	-	-	šaməti	-	-	tədənti
dir	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

3.2.4.1.1 First person

3.2.4.1.1.1 First person singular

Examples of the first person singular in instrumental, comitative, and directional cases are not found in the data.

(1) Nominative

biː	tədənd	ǰaka	uku-səŋb
I	they-dl	thing	give-pas-1

'I gave them a present.'

(2) Accusative

naməji	dagəǰ	jaw-aː
I-acc	follow-con	go-mood

'Follow me!' (literally 'Follow me and go!')

(3) Genitive

miniː	əwəː-m-min	ir-səŋ
I-gen	father-1-1	come-pas

'My father came'

(4) Dative-Locative

ačaː-m	naməd	ars	saj	aw-ǰ	uku-səŋ
father-1	I-dl	leather	shoe	take-con	give-pas

'My father bought me a leather shoes.'

(5) Ablative

namaːr	bišin	anja	čig	ul	mədəː
I-abl	neg	anyone	par	neg	know-pre

'Nobody knows except me.'

3.2.4.1.1.2 First person plural

The first person plural of the personal pronoun has exclusive (hearer is excluded) and inclusive (hearer is included) forms in this dialect. Examples of the ablative, instrumental, comitative, and directional forms of the first person plural of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data.

3.2.4.1.1.2.1 First person plural exclusive

(1) Nominative

ba	doː-jor	jaw-tgun-ba	ta	awl-iː
we-exc	river-ins	go-int-1pl	you-pl	mountain-acc
dulə-ǰ	jaw-ta			
pass-con	go-2pl			

'We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.'

(2) Accusative

əwəː-m	man-i	kulčəː-ǰ	bje
mother-1	we-acc	wait-con	be-pre

'My mother is waiting for us.'

(3) Genitive

ən	tərəg	maːn	ail-d	iči-ǰ	bje
this	vehicle	we-gen	village-dir	go	be-pre

'This car is going to our village.'

(4) Dative-Locative;

əwəː-m	maːnd	kəwkur-iː	ǰaːndal-in	ǰaːnda-səŋ
mother-1	we-dl	children-gen	song-3	sing-pas

'My mother sang a nursery song for us.'

3.2.4.1.1.2.2 First person plural inclusive

Examples of the genitive, ablative, instrumental, comitative, and directional forms of the first person plural of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data.

(1) Nominative

bad	xawjarən	kəːr tal-d	iči-ja
we-inc	all	steppe-dir	go-vol

'Let us go to the steppe together.'

(2) Accusative

təd (ən)	badən-i	uǰugə	ǰaːlan	ənd	ir-səŋ
they	we-inc-acc	see	for	here	come-pas

'They came here to see us.'

(3) Dative-Locative

təd	bas	badən-d	ǰaka	uku-səŋ
they	also	we-inc-dl	thing	give-pas

'They also gave us a present.'

3.2.4.1.2 Second person

There is no "polite" form or "ordinary" form for the second person. There are forms only for the singular and the plural.

3.2.4.1.2.1 Second person singular

Examples of the ablative, instrumental, and directional forms of the second person singular of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data.

(1) Nominative

ši:	xəǰə:	ənd	ir-səŋ-ši-jə
you	when	here	come-pas-2-Int

'When did you come here?'

(2) Accusative

bi:	šami:	ta:lənbje
I	you-acc	love

'I love you.'

(3) Genitive

šini:	nugur-ə:r-šin	nəkən	bajt	xaso:bje
you-gen	husband-abl-2	one	matter	ask-pre

'I am going to ask your husband one matter.'

(4) Dative-Locative

təd	šaməd	ičigə	ǰa:lan	ənd-ər	jaw-səŋ
they	you-dl	go	for	here-abl	go-pas

'They left (from) here to go to you.'

(5) Comitative

šaməti	olulčgə-d-a:	dəmbəl	bajis-č	a:-w
you-com	meet-dl-ref	very	glad-con	be-pre

'I am very glad to meet you.'

3.2.4.1.2.2 Second person plural

Examples of the dative-locative, ablative, instrumental, comitative, and directional forms of the second person plural of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data. Our consultant, answering our question in the vocabulary part, gave us /tanar[t^hanaɾ]/ 'ta (youPlural)-nar (Plural marker)', which is the same as or similar to the second person plural pronoun of the Khalkha and other major Mongolian dialects in Mongolia, Inner Mongolia, and Xinjiang. He also gave us /bejtan[peitan]/ 'body of yours' as the second person plural form of the pronoun. However, he used only ta[t^ha] in basic conversation and the grammar parts.

(1) ba do:-jor jaw-tgun-ba ta awl-i:
we-exc river-ins go-int-1pl you-pl mountain-acc
dulə-ǰ jaw-ta
pass-con go-2pl
'We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.'

(2) Accusative
təd tan-i: uǰu-gə ǰa:lan ənd-ə:r jaw-səŋ
they you-pl-acc see for here-abl go-pas
'They left (from) here to see you.'

(3) Genitive
tan ajl-tan jo:kəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur people be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'

3.2.4.1.3 Third person

The third person singular pronoun 'he, she, it' has the same phonological form as the [-near] demonstrative singular pronoun /tər/ 'that'. But the third person plural pronoun /təd/ 'they' has a different form from that of the [-near] demonstrative pronoun /təndul/ 'they'. There is no gender distinction, as is the case in other Mongolian languages.

3.2.4.1.3.1 Third person singular

Examples of the ablative, instrumental, comitative, and directional forms of the third person singular of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data.

(1) Nominative

tər bas naməd ǰaka uku-səŋ
he also I-dl thing give-pas
'He also gave me a present.'

(2) Accusative

ši: əkmə tər-i: ta:lən-ši
you more he-acc like-Per
'You like him more.'

(3) Genitive

bi: təri: aka:-ja:r-in sorlə-m sajn
I he-gen elder brother-abl-3 learning-1 good
'I learn better than his elder brother.'

(4) Dative-Locative

bi: tərənd ǰaka uku-səŋ-b
I he-dl thing give-pas-1
'I gave him a present.'

3.2.4.1.3.2 Third person plural

Examples of the ablative, instrumental, and directional forms of the third person plural of the personal pronouns are not identified in the data.

(1) Nominative

təd nami: uǰugə ǰa:lan ənd ir-səŋ
they I-acc see for here come-pas
'They came here to see me.'

(2) Accusative

ši: əkmə tədni: ta:lən-ši
you more they-acc like-2
'You like them more.'

(3) Genitive

tədni: gər-in bas ajl-i: xo: dwand-in
they-gen house-Per also village-gen exactly middle-3
'Their house is at the exact center of the village.'

(4) Dative-Locative

bi: tədənd ǰaka ukusəŋ-b
I they-dl thing give-pas-1
'I gave them a present.'

(5) Comitative

tədənti ta warəlči-gə-dən sajn bol-dan
they-com you-pl associate-vni-2pl good become-2pl
'You are better with them.'

3.2.4.2 Possessive pronoun

Possessive pronouns are derived by suffixing the possessive marker /-x/ to the genitive forms of the personal pronouns. Third person possessive pronouns are also thought to exist, the forms of which are expected to be /təri:x/ 'his, hers. its' and /tədni:x/ 'theirs'. However, it seemed that we failed to make the difference of the genitive of the third persons from the third person possessive pronouns clear to the consultant, or, more precisely speaking, make clear what we were expecting. Since he gave us /ən ərguŋ xu:gi:n/ 'this male person's' and /tədni:/ 'their' for the Chinese 他們的 'their, theirs', the Chinese may have been partially responsible for our consultant's misunderstanding.

	Number	
Person	sg	pl
1st	mini:x 'mine'	ma:na:x 'yours'
2nd	šini:x 'yours'	tana:x 'yours'
3rd	-	-

3.2.4.3 Reflexive pronoun

The words /wəːr/ 'self', /bəj/ 'self', /wəːr bəj/ 'self' play the role of reflexive pronoun. The word /bəj/ may be the same word as the noun /bəj/ 'body'. Cases and even reflexive possessiveness are marked on these words, but person, number, and gender are not.

(1) tər bəj-iː kəwk-əː dəmbəl taːl-aː
he self-gen child-ref very love-pre
'He loves his own child very much.'

(2) biː wəːr bəj-əː ǰaːlan tənd iči-səŋ-bi
I self self-ref for there go-pas-1
'I went there for myself.'

(3) šiː wəːr bəj-əː ǰaːlan tənd iči-səŋ-šə
you self self-ref for there go-pas-2
'You went there for yourself.'

(4) tər wəːrbəj-əː ǰaːlan mən tər gaǰir-d iči-səŋ
he self self-ref for very that place-dl go-pas
'He went to that very place for his own self.'

(5) ba wəːr bəj-əː ǰaːlan mən tənd iči-səŋ-ba
we self self-ref for that very there go-pas-1pl
'We went to that very place for ourselves.'

(6) ta bas wəːr bə-jəː ǰaːlan tənd mən
you-pl also self self-ref for there that very
iči-səŋ-ta
go-pas-2pl
'You also went there for your very selves.'

(7) təd bas wəːr bəj-ə ǰaːlan tənd iči-səŋ
they also self self-ref for there go-pas
'They also went there for themselves.'

(8) šinǰaŋ oigor-iː wəːr-d-əː dasa-gə gaǰir-in
Xinjiang Uyghur-gen self-dl-ref govern-vni place-3
'Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region' (literally 'Their Self Governing Region of the Xinjiang Uyghurs')

3.2.4.4 Demonstrative pronoun

The demonstrative pronouns may be classified by number and by relative distance, that is, singular and plural and [+near] and [-near] as below. Note that the plural form of the [-near] demonstrative pronoun is not */tərdul/ but /təndul/.

The case markers and the personal possessive markers are suffixed to the demonstrative pronoun bases. Examples of the actual usage of the plural forms /əndul/ 'these' and /təndul/ 'those' are not found in the data.

	Relative distance	
Number	Near	-Near
sg	ən 'this'	tər 'that'
pl	əndul 'these'	təndul 'those'

(1) tər-əːr bišin jamər gurəːs bje ja
that-abl neg what kind of animal be-pre-Int
'Besides that what kind of animals are there?'

(2) tər-šin ǰuːr
that-2 roe deer
'That is a roe deer.'

(3) ən xaːn ičigə tərgul jə
this where go-vni road Int
'Where does this road go?'

(4) ən-šin ašil-d iči-gə tərgul
this-2 Ashil-dir go-vni road
'This is the road to Ashil.'

3.2.4.5 Interrogative pronoun

The following interrogative pronouns were identified; /anija/ 'who', /xəd/ 'how many', /xəddəːr/ 'which one (in a series)', jo 'what', joːkə 'what', joːkəd 'how many', /ali/ 'which', jugoː 'why', jamər 'what kind of', /joːn/ 'what'.

Case and possessiveness may be marked on certain interrogative pronouns.

(1) gər-t-šin xəd aŋgəl bje
house-dl-2 how many people be-pre
'How many people are there in your home?'

(2) tan ajl-tan joːkəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur people be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'

(3) ašil gaǰir-tan joːkə jigə
Ashil place-2pl how big
'How big is your Ashil place?'

(4) ašil-tan ali xoːn baj-d-səŋ
Ashil-2pl which year be-pm-pas
'In which year was Ashil of yours established?'

(5a) tan ǰəŋfu-tan xaːngol aː-ǰi-bje
you-pl-gen government-2pl where be-con-be-pre
'Where is your (local) government (office)?'

(5b) šiː xaːn-aːr ir-səŋ-b-ši-jə
you where-abl come-pas-cop-2-int
'Where are you coming from?'

(5c) šiː xaːnəx-in mjaga-in aw-b-ši-jə
you belong to where (pos-pro)-3 meat-3 take-pre-2-Int
'Which portion of the meat would you like to have?'

(6) jugoː ul iči šadə-n-da
why neg go can-pre-mood
'Why can you not go?'

(7) jamər arig bje
what kind of alcohol be-pre
'What kind of drinks do you have?' (literally 'What kind of alcohol is there?')

(8) šiː anja-ši-jə
you who-2-Int
'Who are you?'

(9) ši: xəǰə: ənd ir-səŋ-ši-jə
you when here come-pas-2-Int
'When did you come here?'

(10) tər awl-i: nər-in jo:n
that mountain-gen name-3 what
'What is the name of the mountain?'

(11) əndur təŋgər xərə:
today weather how
'How is the weather today?'

(12) ši: jo:n-in aw-b-ši-jə
you what-3 take-pre-2-Int
'Which part do you want?'

3.2.4.6 Indefinitive pronoun

The indefinitive pronoun is derived by attaching particles /č/ or /čig/, having the meaning of concessiveness, to the interrogative pronoun. The case is marked at the interrogative part of the word.

(1) ənd ajə-gə jo: č uwe:
this-dl worry-vni whatever neg
'There is nothing to worry about.' (literally 'There is nothing to worry about this.')

(2) nama:r bišin anja čig ul məd-ə:
I-abl neg whoever neg know-pre
'Nobody knows except me.'

(3) xaǰirə-gə tərgul-d-ə: xən-i: čig uǰu-ǰ-u:
come back-vni road-dl-ref whoever-acc see-con-neg
'I saw no one on the way back (home).'

(4) anja čig ir-səŋ uwe:
whoever come-pas neg
'Nobody has come.'

(5) jamər čig soroč ən bajt-i: ul məd-ə:
whatever pupil this matter-acc neg know-pre
'No pupil ever knows it.'

3.2.5 Verb

A verb may be found in three different forms or states; (1) a finite verb of a sentence, which is the predicate of the whole sentence (2) a non-finite verb, usually called a converb, which serves as a predicate of a non-finite clause, (3) a verbal noun.

3.2.5.1 Finite verb

Finite verbs may be divided into two classes; finite verbs of an indicative sentence and that of an imperative-optative sentence. Tense and aspect, person, and certain moods are marked on the finite verb of a indicative sentence. Mood and person are marked on the finite verb of an imperative-optative sentence.

3.2.5.1.1 Tense and aspect

The present, future, and past tenses and progressive, perfective, and imperfective aspects are identified. The present, future, past tenses and perfective, imperfective aspects are marked by suffixing a grammatical morpheme which usually denotes tense and aspect at the same time. The progressive aspect is marked usually by "a converbal form of a verb+finite form of a copula verb".

3.2.5.1.1.1 Present imperfective

Present imperfective tense/aspect is expressed by suffixing one of the following grammatical morphemes to the stem of a finite verb; /-n/, /-bje/, /-nbje/, /-aː/, and zero-suffix.

(1) ši: əkmə tər-iː taːl-n-ši.
you more he-acc like-pre-2
'You like him more.'

(2) morj xawl-bje
horse run-pre
'Horse runs.'

(3) bi: šami: ta:l-n-bi
I you-acc like-pre-1
'I like you.'

(4) nugur-(u)m xa:n iči-səŋ-in ul məd-(ə)m
wife-1 where go-pas-3 neg know-1
'I do not know where my wife went.'

(5) tər bəj-i: kəwk-ə: dəmbəl ta:l-a:
he self-gen child-ref very love-pre
'He loves his own child very much.'

(6) bə:ǰiŋ-d ugul čas bəra:n war-a:
Beijing-dl winter snow much enter-pre
'It snows heavily in Beijing in winter.'

(7) xa:n iči-ǰ gurə:s awla-(ga)rin-dan bol-o:
where go-con animal hunt-con-2pl become-pre
'Where is it good for hunting?'

3.2.5.1.1.2 Future imperfective

It seems that the future imperfective tense/aspect is marked by the same suffixes which mark the present imperfective tense/aspect. Among them, /-bje/ and zero-suffix are found as the future imperfective tense/aspect markers in the data.

(1) bi: bənj tačoko-d iči-bje
I tomorrow school-dl go-fut
'I go to school tomorrow.'

(2) təd bas bənj tačoko-d iči-bje
they also tomorrow school-dl go-pre
'They also go to school tomorrow.'

(3) ba bənj xawjarən nəkənd tačoko-d iči-bda
we tomorrow all together school-dl go-pre-1pl
'Tomorrow, we go to school together.'

(4) ba bənj tačoko-d iči-ba ta
we tomorrow-dl school-dl go-1pl you-pl
gər-t-ə: a:-t
house-dl-ref be-2pl

'Tomorrow, we go to school, you stay at home.'

3.2.5.1.1.3 Past perfective

Past perfective is marked by suffixing /-səŋ/~/-dən/, /-laː/ to the verbal stem. Our data does not seem big enough to tell the difference among the past perfective markers. /-səŋ/ is usually realized as [-zə]. It is sometimes shortened even to [-z]. It is realized as [-səŋ], [-sən], [-s], etc. after stems ending [-s] or [-t]. /-dən/ is also usually realized as [-də], sometimes even shortened to [-d].

(1) udiš xwar war-səŋ
yesterday rain enter-pas
'It rained yesterday.'

(2) biː bəːǰiŋ-d tur-səŋ
I Beijing-dl be born-pas
'I was born in Beijing.'

(3) biː udiš bəːǰiŋd ir-səŋ-b
I yesterday Beijing-dl com-pas-1
'I came to Beijing yesterday.'

(4a) morj-šin əwz id-dən-ja
horse-2 grass eat-pas-Int
'Did your horse eat grass?'

(4b) aː bəraːn bəraːn id-dən
Oh much much eat-pas
'Oh, it ate a lot.'

(5) ordon nək ail-d nək atirka aː-ǰ aː-laː
before one village-dl one old person live-con live-pas
'Once upon a time, there lived an old man in a village.'

3.2.5.1.1.4 Present progressive

The present progressive tense aspect is marked by "verbal stem-converbal suffix + copula verb in present imperfective form". The copula verb is shortened to [-b-] as in /xaː-ǰi-b-ši-je/ of example (3) or to [-w] as in /baŋgəl-ǰi-w/ of example (4).

(1) ən xəjn xaːn-aːr xəjs-ǰ bje
this wind where-abl blow-con be-pre
'From where is this wind blowing?'

(2) dajnšaŋ čas war-ǰ bje
now snow enter-con be-pre
'It is snowing now.'

(3) šiː dajnšaŋ jamər aləb xaː-ǰ
you now what kind of duty carry out-con
b-ši-je
be-pre-2-Int
'What kind of work are you doing now?'

(4) šiː xəwd-gə-čin baŋgəl-ǰ aː-w
you help-vni-2 thank-con be-pre
'Thank you for your help.' (literally 'I am thanking for your help.')

(5) biː nəkdəːr madən məːnd ir-ǰ a: -bje
I first time this very here come-con be-pre
'I am coming here for the first time.'

3.2.5.1.1.5 Past progressive

The past progressive tense aspect is marked by "verbal stem-converbal suffix+copula verbal stem-past perfective marker". Thus the literal translation for example (1) may be close to 'As for ten years ago, it is the case that I was living in Beijing.' Likewise, example (2) may be literally translated as 'As for the time when my father had come back, it is the case that I was reading a book.'

(1) biː xarbən xoːn-iː əməl-d-in bəːǰiŋ-d
I ten year-gen before-dl-3 Beijing-dl
amda-ǰ aː-səŋ-bi
live-con be-pas-1
'I was living in Beijing ten years ago.'

(2) ača:-m xaǰir-səŋ-d-in bi: ǰulə:n
father-Per come back-pas-dl-3 I book
xola:-ǰ a:-səŋ-b1
read-con be-pas-1
'When my father came back, I was reading a book (=studying).'

3.2.5.1.2 Person

Person is marked by suffixing the personal suffixes, either contracted or full forms of the personal pronouns, to the finite verb. However, this does not seem to be fully consistent.

/-səŋb[-səmb]/ in /ukusəŋb/ 'gave' of example (1a) must be result of integration of the perfective /səŋ/ and the first person singular personal suffix /-b (i)/. Unlike the nominals, verbs have no personal suffixes for the third person. The personal suffix for the second person plural, /-ta/, has variations [-tə] and [-t].

1st			2nd		3rd	
sg	pl		sg	pl	sg	pl
	Exclusive	Inclusive				
-m	-ba	-bda	-ši	-ta	-	-

(1a) bi: tədənd ǰaka uku-səŋ-b
I they-dl thing give-pas-1
'I gave them a present.'

(1b) bi: bə:ǰiŋ-d tur-səŋ
I Beijing-dl be born-pas
'I was born in Beijing.'

(1c) bi: šami: ta:l-n-b
I you-acc like-pre-1
'I like you.'

(2a) ba bənj tačoko-d iči-ba ta
we-exc tomorrow-dl school-dl go-1pl you-pl
gər-t-əː aːt
house-dl-ref be-2pl-exc
'Tomorrow, we go to school, you stay at home.'

(2b) bad xajojarə ǰuləːn xolaː-bda
we-inc together book read-2pl-inc
'We read books together.'

(3a) tər morj-oːr waːn-daŋ
he horse-abl fall-pas
'He fell from the horse.'

(3b) təd mur-əːr kəːr tal-d gwarbən
they water-abl steppe-dative-locative three
čag jəw-səŋ
hour go-past pect
'They went three hours from the water to the steppe.'

3.2.5.1.3 Mood

3.2.5.1.3.1 Imperative-Optative mood

Various imperative-optative mood markers are suffixed to the verbal stem. Sometimes, one mood marker is used for different numbers and the different persons. Some elements cannot be analyzed reasonably. Sometimes, the subject and the mood marker do not agree, as we see in example (6), where the subject is in the first person plural and the mood marker of the finite verb is [-t], thought to be the contracted form of /-ta/.

The simple immediate imperative is marked by a zero suffix. Thus only the verbal stem appears on the surface. Personal suffixes are also placed after the mood marker. Certain polite imperatives are expressed in other ways, as we see in example (8).

(1a) bos
get up-imp
'Get up!'

(1b) bəraːn bajt ǰugujəːrəː butu-ǰ bje
many matter justly complete-con be-imp
'Let all of your matter be fulfilled!' (literally '(You) be accomplishing many matters justly!')

(2) saw-kəna
sit-pol
'Please take a seat!'

(3) ba doː-joːr jaw-tgun-ba ta awl-iː
we river-ins go-Int-1pl-exc you-pl mountain-acc
dulə-ǰ jaw-ta
cross-con go-2pl
'We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.'

(4a) bad xawjarən kəːr tal-d iči-ja
we-inc together steppe-dl go-vol
'Let us altogether go to the steppe.'

(4b) dajnšaŋ gər-təː xarj-ja
now house-dl-ref go back-imp
'Go back home now!'

(4c) dajnšaŋ xawjarən gər-t-əː xarj-ja
now all together house-dl-ref go back-imp
'Please go back home together now!'

(5a) ort nasti bol-ǰ ǰaw nasl-gane
long aged become-con hundred reach the age of-opt
'Live until you become one hundred years old!'

(5b) gurun tum nas nasl-təga
country ten thousand age reach the age of-opt
'Reach the age of ten thousand years, my country!'

(6) bad nəkənd ǰuləːn uǰ-ja-t
we-inc together book see-vol-2pl
'Let us read book together!'

(7a) təri: gər-t-in arča:-tala
he-acc house-dl-3 go back-3imp
'Let him go back home!'

(7b) tədni: gər-t-in kurgə-tala
they-acc house-dl-3 reach-3imp
'Let them go back home!'

(7c) mini: morj-d-(u)m o:n-ǰ iči-tala
I-gen horse-dl-1 ride-con go-3Imp
'Let us go on my horse.' (literally 'Let us ride my horses and let the horse go!')

(7d) tədni: ir-gə dwar-in kur-(ə)rən
they-acc come-vni like-3 reach-con
ir-ǰ-latka
come-con-3imp
'If they want to come, let them come.'

(8) dagje bas man gər-t-man ir-gə-tan
again also our house-dl-1pl come-2pl
ort-(i)ǰ a:-ba
welcome-com be-1pl-exc
'Come again to my home!' (literally 'We are inviting your coming at our home again.')

3.2.5.1.3.2 Some other moods

There are some mood markers, the functions of which are roughly speculated.

(1) kičijə-ǰ jaw-ai
take care-con go-mood
'Watch out!'

(2) tali: kakra bje-məkə
steppe-gen chicken be-mood
'There seems to be a pheasant.'

(3) xarəŋgu bol-dəŋ mən awl-d want-alja
dark become-pas this very mountain-dl sleep-mood
'It has become dark. Let us sleep at this very mountain.'

(4) xa:n kərd-ǰ want-u:-da
where lie down-con sleep-pre-mood
'Where shall we rest?'

(5) ši: əməl want-ǰ-(i)la
you before sleep-con-mood
'You may go to sleep first!'

(6) sons-(o)r-(u)m dəw-šin bə:d gurun-ə:r
younger sibling-2 foreign country-abl
hear-vn-1
come back-pre-mood
'I heard that your younger sibling is coming back from abroad.'

(7) a: tərən-d-ə: bais-č bje-la
oh that-dl-ref be pleased-con be-pre-mood
'Oh, that is why you are so delighted.'

(8) əwə-šin əkmə xajərəlǰ-(i)ǰ a:-na
mother-2 more feel sorry-con be-mood
'Your mother must have been sadder.'

3.2.5.2 Non-finite verb

Grammatical suffixes with various meanings are placed at the end of the verbal stem to form the non-finite verb, which serves as the predicate of the dependent or coordinating clauses. We have suffixes such as /-ǰ/-č/ for imperfective, /-a:ldi/ for perfective, /-a:d/ for perfective, /-ga/ for perfective, /-šin/ for conditional, and /-(ga)rin/ for conditional meanings.

(1) bi: bə:ǰiŋ-ə:r gar-č urumuči dulə-ǰ
I Beijing-abl come out-con Urumqi pass-con
ir-səŋ-b
come-pas-1
'I came from Beijing and passed through Urumqi.'

(2) bi: banjər buda: id-ə:ldi tačokod iči-səŋ-b
I morning meal eat-con school-dl go-pas-1
'I ate breakfast and went to school.'

(3a) bi: udiš ǰulə:n-i: durəldə-ǰ aw-a:d
I yesterday book-acc buy-con take-con
gər-t-ə: xaǰir-səŋ-b
house-dl-ref come back-pas-1
'I bought a book and came back home yesterday.'

(3b) bi: udiš ǰulə:n-i: durəldə-ǰ aw-a:ldi
I yesterday book-acc buy-con take-con
gər-t-ə: xaǰir-səŋ-b
house-dl-ref come back-pas-1
'I bought a book and came back home yesterday.'

(4) ši: sor-šin sajn-agarin šami: səbu-šin kə:ni-bje
you learn-2 good-cond you-acc teacher-2 praise-pre
'If you learn well, your teacher will praise you.'

(5) tədni: ir-gə dwar-in kur-(ə)rən ir-ǰ-latka
they-acc come-vni like-3 reach-con come-con-3imp
'If they want to come, let them come.'

(6) əməl-ə: bo:lga-ga tala
saddle-ref take off-con place
'Take off the saddle!' (literally 'Take off the saddle and place it!')

3.2.5.3 Verbal noun

Only the verbal noun imperfective marker /-gə/ and the verbal noun perfective marker /-səŋ/, /-dəŋ/ are identified in the data. As we can see above, the verbal noun perfective marker also expresses the past perfective tense and aspect in the finite verb. The verbal noun perfective markers are often integrated with personal markers. The verbal nouns take case markers as is shown in example (4).

(1) bi: bəj-m sorə-gə ǰulə:n-i durəldə-ǰ aw-səŋ-b
I self-1 learn-vni book-acc buy-con take-pas-1
'I bought a book that I will study.'

(2a) udiš durəldə-ǰ a:čir-səŋ ǰulə:n-i bi:
yesterday buy-con bring-pas book-acc I

xolaː- əw-ka
read-con be-pre-mood
'I am reading a book which I bought yesterday.'

(2b) ən-šin aː-gara əwəː-m oji-səŋ warkəl-in
this-2 be-con mother-1 sew-vnp clothes-3
'As for this, it is a piece of clothing which my mother made.'

(3) ən gər nidan taːl-dəŋ gər
this house last year build-vnp house
'This house is a house which was built last year.'

(4) biː gər-t-əː xarj-gə-d-aː tərgul-əːr gja-d
I house-dl-ref return-vni-dl-ref road-ins
ičital-dəŋ-b
go-pas-1
'I went to the market on my way home.'

3.2.6 Adverb

Adverbs modify verbs and adjectives. As we see in examples (2a), (2b), (2c), there are many adverbs of non-Mongolian origin.

Certain adverbs seem to be derived from pronouns and instrumental markers, as is seen in examples (3a), (3b), (3c).

As we can see in examples (4a), (4b), and (4c), the same word in the same phonological form may function as an adverb, an adjective, or a noun, as is the case in many Mongolian languages and dialects.

(1) sunəkə sajn want-səŋ-ši-jə
night well sleep-vnp-2-Int
'Did you sleep well last night?'

(2a) maːn ajl-man dur-in dəmbəl nandaːkan
our village-1pl shape-3 very beautiful
'Our village is very beautiful.' (literally 'Its shape of our village is very beautiful.')

(2b) bi: gaška iči-ja
I alone go-vol
'I will go alone.'

(2c) əwə:-šin əkmə xajərəlǰ-ǰ a:-na
mother-Per more feel sorry-con be-mood
'Your mother must have been very sad.'

(3a) əjmər o:lč-səŋ-d-a: unun bajs-č a:-bda
like this way meet-pas-dl-ref truly glad-con be-2pl
'We are truly happy that we meet again in this way.'

(3b) təgərə ši: bas ir-ǰ a-gane
then you also come-con be-opt
'And, you also come again!'

(3c) bi: čulə ərən-d-ə: sor-ǰ a:-səŋ-mini teixtə
I free time-dl-ref learn-con be-pas-1 but
čigagara sardwə:-d-ə: ul kuru-m-bje
grandmother-dl-ref neg reach-1-be-pre
'I learned from my grandmother when I had time but (my needle work is) not reaching my grandmother's level.'

(4a) šin nugur-šin gər-t-ə: bje-ja bə:d
your husband-2 house-dl-ref be-Int outside
gar-či-səŋ
go out-emp-pas
'Is your husband home? He already went out.'

(4b) bə:d gurun-i: xu:-in
out country-gen person-3
'foreigner'

(4c) bə:d xər a:-ǰ jə əwlən bje
outside how be-con cloud be-pre
'How is it outside? There are clouds.'

3.2.7 Postposition

There are certain words which always come after the nominals and are governed by various cases.

(1) After Nominal-Ablative

(1a) ən-ə:r ordon
this-abl before
'up to now'

(1b) ən-ə:r xwajn
this-abl after
'from now on'

(2) After Nominal-Nominative

(2a) təd tani: uǰu-gə ǰa:lan ənd-ə:r jaw-səŋ
they you-acc see-vni for here-abl go-pas
'They left (from) here to see you.'

(2b) bi: udur dulə gurə:s awla:-č-bje
I day every game hunt-con-be-pre
'I am hunting every day.'

(3) After Nominal-Genitive

(3a) ši: durbən kono-i: dwatər-in ən ǰulə:n-i:
you four day-gen within-3 this book-acc
xola:-ǰ bar
read-con finish
'You read through this book within four days!'

(3b) bi: šami: noga:n xotorti
I you-gen like happy
'I am happy like you.'

(3c) bi: šami: ǰa:lan xotorti bol-bje
I you-gen for happy become-pre
'I am happy because of you.'

3.2.8 Particle

Interrogative, negative, concessive, and modal particles are identified in the data. Yes/no question and wh-word questions use the same interrogative particle /-ja/. It seems that the particle has phonologically conditioned allomorphs [-jə]/[-jo].

Sometimes it is integrated into the finite verb with other grammatical morphemes. Thus ir-səŋ-bje-ši-jə/ in example (1b) is realized as [irzbiʃə] in the surface.

(1a) ərgun-šin xaǰir-səŋ-ja
husband-2 come back-pas-int
'Did your husband come back?'

(1b) ši: xa:n-a:r ir-səŋ-b-ši-jə
you where-abl com-pas-cop-2-int
'Where did you come from?'

(1c) sə:s-šin xərə: bəra:n-ja očog-jo
urine-2 how much a lot-int little-int
'How much is your urin'e?' 'Is it much or little?'

(2a) bi: daŋgə ul o:m
I tobacco Neg drink-1
'I am not smoking.'

(2b) təgər anja irsəŋ anja čig ir-səŋ uwe:
then who come-pas whoever come neg
'Then who came? 'Nobody came.'

(2c) bi: soroč biše
I pupil neg
'I am not a pupil.'

(2d) tər warkəl-i: ši:bu: əmus
that clothes-acc you neg wear
'You do not wear that clothing!'

(3a) ənd ajə-gə jo:č uwe:
here worry-vni whatever neg
'There is nothing to worry about.' (literally 'There does not exist anything to worry about this.')

(3b) nama:r bišin anija čig ul məd-ə:
-abl neg whoever neg know-pre
'Nobody knows except me.'

3.2.9 Interjection

Following interjection words are found in the data.

(1) a: taljər-dən
int hit-pas
'Oh, I hit!'
(2) oj ǰu:r
int roe deer
'Oh, a roe deer!'
(3) ma aw
int take
'Here you are!' or 'Hey, take it!'
(4) bai-ǰa
stop-mood
'Wait a moment!'

3.3 Syntactic description

3.3.1 Word order

The principle word order of the sentence is Subject-Object-Predicate. Although we do not find any evidence of exceptions to this principle in the data, word ordering must be relatively free, considering that every constituent of a sentence has certain devices which mark its role in the sentence and its relationships with other constituents.

The subject is often omitted when it is evident from the context.

(1) bi: šami: ta:l-n-b
I you-acc like-pre-1
'I like you.'
(2) šami: tanə-gə-d-a: dəmbəl bajis-č a:-w
you-accnow-vni-dl-ref very be glad-con be-pre
'I am very glad to meet you.'

3.3.2 Conjunction

3.3.2.1 Phrasal conjunction

Phrases are conjoined by the comitative suffix /-ti/ which is suffixed to the preceding nominal. Conjunction words such as the English "and", "or" are not identified in the data.

(1) ilga-ti bildor
flower-com bird
'flower and bird'

(2) ši: jamər ǰaka aw-bje-ši-ja bi: dəːrəg
you what kind of thing take-fut-2-Int I upper
warkəl-ti magəl aw-bje
clothes-com hat take-fut
'What kind of thing are you going to buy? I will buy an overcoat and a hat.'

3.3.2.2 Sentential conjunction

3.3.2.2.1 Coordination

Coordination takes place between two independent clauses with or without the conjunction word. In example (1), the negative particle /uwə/ 'no, not' functions as the coordinator after the preceding sentence is perfectly finished, while there is no coordinator in example (2). In example (3), the adverb /teixtə čigagara/ 'nevertheless' functions as the coordinator. In example (4), two separate sentences are semantically conjoined without any coordinator.

(1) sardəwəː-šin oros-oːr ir-səŋ-jə uweː
grandmother-2 Russia-abl come-pas-int not
moŋɢul-oːr ir-səŋ-jə
Mongolia-abl come-pas-int

'Did your grandmother come from Russia or come from Mongolia?'

(2) səːs-šin bəraːn-ja očog-jo
urine-2 much-int little-int
'Is your urine much or little?'

(3) biː čulə ərən-d-əː sor-ǰ aː-səŋ-b-bje
I free time-dl-ref learn-con be-pas-1-cop
teixtə čigagara sardwəː-d-əː ul kur-(u)m-bje
nevertheless grandmother-dl-ref reach-1-be-pre
'I learned from my grandmother when I had time. But my needlework has not reached my grandmother's level.'

(4) əwəː-m ǰagos id-səŋ ačaː-m xonin mjaga-in id-səŋ
mother-1 fish eat-pas father-1 sheep meat-1 eat-pas
'My mother ate fish and my father ate mutton.'

3.3.2.2.2 Subordination

The most prevalent means of expressing subordination is through the use of grammatical suffixes which are attached to the verbal stem of the predicate verb of the dependent clause, also called a converb, as we discussed in the morphology section. Examples are given in (1) and (2).

Adverbial phrases is another device for subordination, as we can see in examples (3) and (4).

(1) biː bəːǰiŋ-əːr gar-č urumuči dulə-ǰ
I Beijing-abl come out-con Urumqi pass-con
ir-səŋ-b
come-pas-1
'I came from Beijing and passed through Urumqi.'

(2) biː udiš ǰuləːn-i dурəldəǰ aw-aːd
I yesterday book-acc buy take-con
gər-t-əː xaǰir-səŋ-b
house-dl-ref come back-pas-1
'I bought a book and came back home yesterday.'

(3) čəwfuŋ nurs-səŋ xojn-aːr udur čagdoː

autumnal equinox pass-pas back-abl day
shorbol-ǰ aː-gə-ja
become-con be-vni-mood
'Since the Autumnal Equinox Day has passed, the day is becoming shorter.'

(4) ačaː-m xaǰir-səŋ-d-in biː ǰuləːn xolaː-ǰ
father-1 come back-pas-dl-3 I book read-con
aː-səŋ-bi
be-pas-1
'When my father came back, I was reading a book (=studying).'

3.3.3 Negation

Negation is marked by negative particles. When the verb is negated, the negative marker is placed before the verb, as we see in examples (1) and (2). When as indicative verb is negated, the negative marker /ul/ comes before the verb, as we see in example (1).

When the verb is in the imperative-optative mood, the negative marker /bu/ is placed before the verb.

When a noun or a verbal noun is negated, the negative marker comes after the noun or verbal noun, as we see in examples (3) and (4a), (4b). When the object of negation is existence, /uweː/ is placed after the verbal noun or the noun, as in example (3). A rather unusual example of the usage of /uweː/ is example (8), in which /uweː/ is negating a verb, of course post-verbally.

When the object of negation is quality or content, /bišin/ is placed after the noun or the verbal noun, as in examples (4a) and (4b). As we can see in example (4b), not only the predicate but any constituent may be negated by /bišin/.

As we see in examples (5) and (6), the original meaning of the particle /uweː/ is 'non-existence' or 'not-existing', and that of /bišin/ is 'other'.

As we see in example (7), the particle /uwe:/ is used as a negative reply to a question, as "No!" in English.

(1) bi: daŋgə ul o:m
I tobacco neg drink-1
'I am not smoking.'

(2) tər warkəl-i: ši: bu: əmus
that clothes-acc you neg wear
'You do not wear that clothing!'

(3) təgər anja irsəŋ anja čig ir-səŋ uwe:
then who come-pas whoever come meg
'Then who came?' 'Nobody came.'

(4a) bi: soroč biše
I pupil neg
'I am not a pupil.'

(4b) nama:r bišin anja čig ul məd-ə:
I-abl neg whoever neg know-pre
'Nobody knows except me.'

(5) ənd ajə-gə jo: č uwe:
here worry-vni whatever neg
'There is nothing to worry about.' (literally 'There does not exist anything to worry about this.')

(6) bišin bajt-šin uwe: a:-gə
other matter-2 not be-vni
'Isn't there other matters of yours?'

(7) mjaga-in xojo-səŋ-ta-ja uwe: xojo-ǰ ugwa:
meat-3 divide-pas-2pl-int no divide-con neg
'Did you divide the meat? No, we have not divided yet.'

(8) ši: udiš tačoko-d iči-ǰ a:-gə-ši-jə
you yesterday school-dl go-con be-vni-2-int oh
a: iči-ǰ uwe:
go-con neg
'You did not go to school yesterday, did you? Oh, I did not go.'

3.3.4 Interrogative

As is mentioned above, both the yes/no question and the wh-word questions use the same interrogative particle /-ja/, placed in the final position of the finite verb. It seems that it has phonologically conditioned allomorphs [-jə]/[-jo/. Sometimes it is integrated into the finite verb with other grammatical morphemes. Thus /ir-səŋ-bje-ši-jə/ in example (2) is realized as [irzbišə] on the surface.

Interrogative particles may be omitted in wh-word questions, as in example (4).

(1) ərgun-šin xaǰir-səŋ-ja
husband-2 come back-pas-int
'Did your husband come back?'

(2) ši: xa:n-a:r ir-səŋ-b-ši-jə
you where-abl com-pas-cop-2-int
'Where did you come from?'

(3) sə:s-šin xərə: bəra:n-ja očog-jo
urine-2 how much a lot-int little-int
'How much is your urine?' 'Is it much or little?'

(4) ig kəwk-šin xədi: bol-daŋ
big child-2 how many become-pas
'How old is your big child?'

Interrogative pronouns such as /anja/ 'who', /xəd/ 'how many', /xəddə:r/ 'which one (in series)', /jo:/ 'what', /jo:n/ 'what' /jo:kə/ 'what', /jo:kəd/ 'how many', /ali/ 'which', /jugo:/ 'why', /jamər/ 'what kind of', /jo:n/ 'what' are indispensable for the wh-word questions.

Case and possessiveness may be marked on certain interrogative pronouns, as is mentioned in the morphology section.

(1) gər-t-šin xəd aŋgəl bje
house-dl-2 how many people be-pre
'How many people are there in your home?'

(2) tan ajl-tan jo:kəd dagor aŋgəl bje
your village-2pl how many Dagur prople be-pre
'How many Dagur people are there in your village?'

(3) ašil gaǰir-tan jo:kə jigə
Ashil place-2pl how big
'How big is your Ashil place?'

(4) ašil-tan ali xo:n baj-d-səŋ
Ashil-2pl which year be-pm-pas
'In which year was Ashil of yours established?'

(5a) tan ǰəŋfu-tan xa:ngol a:-ǰi-bje
you-pl-gen government-2pl where be-con-be-pre
'Where is your (local) government (office)?'

(5b) ši: xa:n-a:r ir-səŋ-bje-ši jə
you where-abl come-pas-cop-2-int
'Where are you coming from?'

(5c) ši: xa:n-(ə)x-in mjaga-in aw-bje-ši-jə
you where-3 meat-3 take-fut-2-int
'Which portion of the meat would you like to have?'

(6) jugo: ul iči šadə-n-da
why neg go can-pre-mood
'Why can't you go?'

(7) jamər arig bje
what kind of alcohol be-pre
'What kind of drinks do you have?' (literally 'What kinds of alcoholic beverage are there?')

(8) ši: anja-ši-jə
you who-2-int
'Who are you?'

(9) ši: xəǰə: ənd ir-səŋ-ši-jə
when here come-pas-2-int
'When did you come here?'

(10) tər awl-i: nər-in jo:n
that mountain-gen name-Per what
'What is the name of that mountain?'
(11) əndur təŋgər xərə:
today weather how
'How is the weather today?'
(12) ši: jo:n-in aw-bje-ši-jə
you what-3 take-fut-2-int
'Which part do you want to take?'

3.3.5 Passive

Although we do not have much evidence in the data, it is possible to state that passivity is expressed by the construction "(Noun Phrase-dl+) Verbal stem- (r) (d)", as we can see in examples (1b) and (2b). It seems that the "Non Phrase-dl" part of the passive construction may be omitted when it is already evident, as we see in (2b).
Enhebatu et al. (1988: 378) introduced /-rd/ as a passive marker in Buteha dialect, however, it is not /-rd/ but either /-r/ or /-d/ in Tacheng dialect as we see in (5a) and (5b).

The consultant was reluctant to reply in passive constructions. He often insisted that he should answer in the active voice, and we failed to have him reply in the passive, as in examples (3b) and (4). Example (4) was the consultant's reply for the Chinese sentence "苹果被我吃了的" 'The apple was eaten by me'.

(1a) awlačin tawl barj-səŋ
hunter rabbit catch-pas
'A hunter caught a rabbit.'
(1b) tawl awlačin-d barj-r-tən
rabbit hunter-dl catch-pm-pas
'A rabbit was caught by a hunter.'

(2a) bi: kəwkur-i: wajl-gə-in sons-(ə)m-kə
I children-gen cry-vni hear-1-mood
'I hear children crying.'

(2b) xo:l-o:r kəwkur-i: wajl-dən daw-i:-in
far-abl children-gen cry-vnp sound-acc-3
sons-(o)r-č-bje-kə
hear-pm-con-cop-Mood
'From far away, children's crying is being heard.'

(3a) təri: ača:-in nidan nək šiŋkən gər
He-gen father-3 last year one new house
tal-dən-ka
build-pas-mood
'His father built a new house last year.'

(3b) ən gər nidan tal-dəŋ gər
this house last year build-vnp house
'This house is a house which was built last year.'

(4) alim-i: bi: id-səŋ
apple-acc I eat-pas
'I ate the apple.'

(5a) ašil-tan ali xo:n baj-d-səŋ
Ashil-2pl which year be-pm-pas
'In which year was Ashil of yours established?'

(5b) nək mja:ŋga isən ǰaw ǰaran gwarəb-da:r
one thousand nine hundred sixty third-ord
xo:n baj-d-saŋ
year be-pm-pas
'It was established in 1963.'

3.3.6 Causative

Causativity is expressed by suffixing the causative marker /-l/, /-lga-/ to the verbal stem.

(1a) bi: os ačir-səŋ-bi
I water bring-pas-1
'I brought water.'

(1b) əwəː-m naməd os aw-č-(i)l-daŋ
mother-Per I-dl water take-con-cm-pas
'My mother let me bring water.'

(2a) biː nək kakra barj-ǰ aw-səŋ-b
I one chicken seize take-pas-1
'I killed a chicken.'

(2b) biː dəw-d-əː nək kakra
I younger brother-dl-ref one chicken-acc
barj-lga-səŋ-bi
seize-cm-pas-1
'I let my younger brother kill a chicken.'

(3a) min dəw-m tačoko-d jaw-səŋ
my younger brother-1 school-dl go-pas
'My younger brother went to school.'

(3b) əwəː-m dəw-min tačko-d jaw-lga-səŋ
mother-1 younger brother-1 school-dl go-cm-pas
'My mother let my younger brother go to school.'

Appendix 1

Vocabulary

1. Words are listed in the following order: a, aː, b(=/p/). č(=/tɕʰ/), d(=/t/), e, eː, ə, əː, f, g(=/k/), h, i, iː, j, ǰ(=/tɕ/), k(=/kʰ/), l, m, n, ŋ, o, oː, p(=/pʰ/). r(=/ɾ/), s, š(=/ɕ/), t(=/tʰ/), u, u, uː, w, x, y, z, ʒ.

2. Each words are presented with Phonological transcription of Dagur items in bold type and meaning (supplement)

A

abil boldəŋ mjaga half cooked meat
ačaː father, dad
ačaːwəː parents (<**ačaː** 'father' (and) **əwəː** 'mother')
ačikčaːn mouse, rat, racoon
ačirbje to bring, to take
adəl same
adəl biše unlike, not same
adix neighbor (<Manchu *adaki*)
adirga stallion, male horse
adoː morj herd of horses
adoː xonj herd of sheep
adoːč gaǰir pasture (literally 'cattle raiser place')
adoːčin stock breeder, sheep breeder, grazer
adoːs domestic animal
adoːs adoːč grazer
adoːs adoːlbje to graze
adrəgəbje to geld, to castrate

aga dəw brothers, brother and sister (literally 'elder brother and younger sibling')
agor weapon, gun
ajbje to be afraid of
ajl township, village
ajl xal family
ajlaːbje to untie, to unbind, to undo, to take off
ajməke dangerous, fearful
ajmən race, nation
nək ajmən the whole clan, kinsmen (literally 'one race')
ajs uweː boring
ajilgəld uweː I am sorry!
akaː elder brother
akor trousers
akor bəs belt
albje[1] to say, to tell
albje[2] to kill
aldəgəna thorn
aldər signal
aldərbje to fail
aldlə lose
aləb work, job, occupation
aləb or government office, public office
aləb ujl duty
aləb ujldəːč worker, laborer
aləb xwaː udur workday
aləbiː bajt public duties, official business, public affairs
aləbiː xuː public service personnel
aləbdal simultaneously
aləlčibje to struggle
algabje to peel off
alim apple
alim moːd fruit tree
alim waːnbje to bear fruit
alimiː marbje to bear fruit, to fructify

alǰ barbje to extinct
alt[1] gold
alt[2] One of the Dagur-Mongolian units of length which is a distance between the tips of the middle fingers of two hands extended to either side, around 160cm.
am[1] mouth
am[2] provision
amar rest, break
amar uwe: fierce, intense
amarbje to rest, to take a break
amardo: easy, simple
amargə or hotel (literally 'resting place')
amargə udur rest day
amdə gaǰir region, rural area
amdər muzzle of a gun
amiltbje to have time to, to catch
amj life
amjd a:bje to live
amjdal living, life
amjslabje to breathe, breath
amna rooster, cock
amt sweet smelling
amtbje[1] to taste
amtbje[2] to hold in the mouth
antti mjaga uncooked meat
anir uwe: calm, quiet, secretly
anir uwe: buda: id Eat meal quietly!
anja who
anjake customer
anjake xu: guest
anja:bje to celebrate the new year (<Manchu *aniya* 'year')
anoko key (<Manchu *anakū*)
aŋgəla cistern, water tank, jar, pot (<Manchu *anggara*)
aŋglər slowly
apəlčibje to struggle, to contest

arbə situation (<Manchu *arbūn*)
arčbje to take along, to bring along
arəbše:bje to adopt
arigaːr gə:tbje to get sober
argə means, measure, method
aribgje fan
arig alcoholic beverage[1)]
arigi: čomo: wine glass, liquor glass, goblet
arjaːldi: little, few
arkən back
arokon clean, pure
arokon or hygienic, sanitary
arokwaːbje to clean, to sweep, to arrange, to put things in order
arokwaːrdbje to become clean, to cleanse
ars[1] spleen
ars[2] skin, leather
ars gočoːr leather boots
ars magal leather hat
ars warkəl leather clothing
ars xilaːs leather strap
arslə:n lion
aršaːn spa
aruːŋ or hygienic, sanitary
aširt pine tree
ašk̂je wing
atxu: twin
atjəkjə spider
awbje to take, to have
awčbje to marry (to take a wife), to take along, to bring along
awl mountain
awlačin hunter

1) Ding (1991: 61) has this word; **æriɣ** '酒'.

awli: bur xorin mountain peak
awli: ərəg steep mountain slope
awli: ǰaləg mountain valley
awli: kə:kə wild cat, lynx
awli: xal:in mountain ridge
awli: xja:rdin cliff
awli: xorin mountain top
awlǰa:bje to squeeze
awr steam, vapor, haze
awr bo:ǰ irbje to fog, to mist (literally 'the vapor falls down')
awr kurbje to get angry
awrtikabje to get mad
awša: elder sister's husband (<Ewenki according Enhebatu et al. (1984: 4) who has **auʃe:** for Chinese '姐夫')
awruk lung
awruk əwr tuberculosis

A :

a:bje to reside, to be
a:gərənd while, when, temporally
bi: bitig sorč a:gərənd when I was studying
a:ǰ a:gəda while staying in some place
a:ǰ a:gə gaǰir residence, residing, dwelling
a:ǰ a:gə or address, residence
a:ǰbje to be, to exist
a:lj which
a:ndbje to live
a:ŋgəǰ bajbje to wait, to stay
a:rbən moment
a:rəl thill, shaft
a:uwe: not to exist, not to be, there is no ~

B

ba we (nominative of the first person plural, exclusive)

ba ətərtəŋba We were defeated.
ba ətsəŋba We won.
bačilbje to boil, to simmer
bačildəŋ os boiled water
bačilgaːbje to boil (transitive), to heat
bad we (nominative of the first person plural, inclusive)
badən we (stem of the first person plural, inclusive)
baga seed bull
bajan rich
bajbje to stand, to stop, to cease
bajčax event
bajlgaːbje[1] to quit, to prohibit
bajlgaːbje[2] to construct
bajsbje to be pleased, to be happy, to be glad
bajsəlte pleasant
bajsəlgəm bajt happy event
bajt affair, matter, business
bajt arbə situation, case, circumstances
bajt butəgə or office
bajt ǰawlbje to take the responsibility, to take charge of
bajtəlbje to use
bajti xuː criminal, offender, convict
bajtləg cost
bajtləgə ǰaka material
baǰart kidney
baǰi busy
baǰir dirty
baka ditch
bakard mushroom
balaga soil, earth
balaga gər earthen house
balaga gugu wasp
balaga kwaːŋgra puddle, poor
balbje to bury
balčibje to make dirty, to soil

balčirdbje be muddy, turbid
balkobje to close (eyes)
banigəlbje to appreciate, to be thankful to
banigəljˇ aw Thank you!
banin character, personality. attitude (Manchu *banin*)[2)]
banin moː ill natured
banin sajn good natured
banix Thank you! (<Manchu *baniha*)
banjərd morning
banjərdig budaː breakfast
baŋgəl gaǰir the Earth. See also **təŋgər gaǰir.**
bardbje to disappear
barənte strict
badiːx our side, one party
barjbje to grab, to hold, to seize, to catch
barjeː bracelet
barkən god
bas also, again
basərəg doorsill, threshold
bawbej treasure, valuables (<Chinese *bǎobèi* 寶貝)
bawˇj newspaper
baːbje to have a bowel movement
baːgən tomb
baːnj hail
baːnnə coward
baːs excrements
baːtur brave, hero
bədərbje to scatter, to disperse
bəj[1] side
nək bəj one side
bəj[2] body
bəjšin you (literally 'body of yours')
bəjšin sajn jə How are you?

2) Ding (1991: 61) transcribed this word as **bænin** '脾氣'.

bəjtan you (second person plural, literally 'body of yours')
bəj gər family
bəj sajn health (literally 'body good')
bəjčibje to watch, to supervise
bəjdəː olbje pregnancy, to get pregnant
bəjdəː oldəŋ pregnant
bəjəː albje to commit suicide, to kill oneself
bəjəː ǰugəːbje to make up, to dress oneself, to do hairdo
bəjəː ǰulgəbje to perform
bəjəː ǰaːlan for oneself
bəjlbje to dance
bəjin buku healthy, physically good
bəjin xwəːbje dropsical swelling
bəkbje to tie, to bind
bəlbəsən widow
bələg wart, verruca
bələn ǰabə condition
bəlijəːbje to take away from, to snatch from
bəljəkə joint (of the bones)
bəlkəbje to prepare
bəmbrəx convex
bəndəbje to hurry, to haste
bənj tomorrow
bəraːn[1] many
bəraːn[2] right
bəraːn bəj right side, to the right side
bəraːn bəjd in the right side
bərgən elder brother's wife
bərj daughter-in-law, younger brother's wife
bərkeč beside
bəs belt, sashes
bəːbug bear
bəːd gurun foreign country
bəːd guruniː xuː foreigner
bəːdəx outside, outer

bəːdəx akor outer trousers
bəːdəx čaːnč lined garments, outer garments
bəːgədə outward
bəːǰiŋ Beijing (<Chinese *běijīng* 北京)
bəːl gloves, mittens
bəːlbəːtiː butterfly
bəːlǰibje to vomit, vomition
biŋga cake, cookie, pastry (<Chinese *bǐnggān* 餅干)
biše no, not
biː soroːči biše I am not a pupil.
biː ǰuŋgwəː xuːin biše I am not a Chinese.
bišin different, other, it is not
bišin xuː other person
bitəg alphabet, letter, script (<Manchu *bithe*)
bitəg širəː desk
biː I (first person singular)
bjaltbje to overflow
bjaltka slick, smooth
bjaw watch (<Chinese *biǎo* 表)
bjaːlbje to slice
bje to have, to own, to be, to exist, copula verb
bodbje[1] to paint, to dye, to make up, to paint, to do one's face on
bodbje[2] to think, to calculate, to judge
bodər paint
bodor example
bodul plan
bog deer
bog əwr deer antlers
bogən short (of hight), low
bogiː ars deerskin, buckskin
bogiː mjaga venison
bogor buttocks, rump
bojgən household
boǰi winnow, winnowing fan (<Chinese *bòji* 簸箕)

boǰirbje to come down
bola:r fountain, spring. See also **šə:r**. Enhebatu et al. (1984: 85) has **bula:r** '泉' for this word.
bolbje to ripe
boldəŋ noga: cooked vegetable
bolgabje to ripen
bolgo otter
boljəgi: steep
bollo: all right
bololobje to want
bolsəŋ ripen
bomto: flower bud
bondo: hasty, quick tempered
borčo: bean pod
boro:bje to run away
boro:lbje to retreat, run away
bosbje to stand up
bosč bajbje to stand up
boskabje to erect
bo:bje to fall, to come down, to descend, to dismount
awla:r bo:bje to climb down from a mountain
bo:du kitchen knife (<Chinese *báodāo* 薄刀)
bo:ǰirbje to fall down, to mist
bo:lgabje to unload, to put down
bo:ljoke anklebone
bubundəlgəbje to urge
buda: gjanəgə xila: tray
buda: gər kitchen
budu:ŋ big, large, coarse
budu:ŋ borčo bean (literally 'big bean' which might be a direct translation of Chinese *dàdòu* 大豆)
budu:ŋ gətəs large intestine
bugəl lump
bukəl safe, secure
buku strong, firm

bulə:n tepid, lukewarm
bulkə mirror
bur[1] clothe
bur xəmǰə:lbje to measure the cloth
bur[2] extreme
bur madən last, final
burga:s tree, willow tree
butubje to accomplish
butusəŋ bajt success (literally 'accomplished matter'), result, effect
butusəŋ uwe: bajt fail (literally 'unaccomplished matter')
bu: do not
bu: xal Do not touch!
bu:rəg eagle
bu:s louse

Č

čabdəl peach
čač skirt
čačbje[1] to seed, to sow, to scatter, to sprinkle, to spill, to spray. Cf. Enhebatu et al. (1984: 297) **ʧeʧ-** '洒, 潑'.
čačbje[2] to break
čaddəŋ full
čag hour
čag ərən due date
čaj tea (<Chinese *chá* 茶)
čaj ǰus brown (literally 'tea color')
čakarbje to break, to get broken. Cf. Enhebatu et al. (1984: 293) **ʧɑkər-** '斷開, 離婚'.
čakargje out of order, breakdown
čakolobje to cut, to sever
čaklo:bje to reduce, to shorten
čakto:[1] short
čakto:[2] edge, margin
čakto: ərən short period, short time

čakto: mjawčaŋ pistol, handgun
čakto: xi:bje to contract, to shrink
čalin salary, wages, pay. Cf Enhebatu et al. (1984: 297) **ʧelin** '工資'.
čaŋ ginger (<maybe Chinese *jiāng* 薑)
čaŋgəlbje to get tired, to be exhausted
čaŋgəldabje to become tired
čapart tree ear mushroom (木耳)
čarčbje to ax, to chop, to cut, to mow down
čas snow. Cf. its phonetic form [tɕʰaz].
ča:go kettle
ča:ǰ the day after tomorrow
ča:ǰok teacup, (porcelain) vowel, Cf. Enhebatu et al. (1984: 292) **ʧɑ:ʤuk^{w}** '碗, 瓷'.
ča:ǰoktik porcelain
ča:misgan yellow weasel
ča:nč underwear
ča:s paper. Cf. its phonetic form [tɕʰa:z].
čenbi pencil (<Chinese *qīanbi* 鉛筆)
če:n lot, lottery (<Chinese *qiān* 籤)
če:n tatbje to draw a lots
čənǰo: pepper (<Chinese *qīngjiāo* 青椒)
čəŋ scale, balance (<Chinese *chèng* 稱)
čəŋčančwo quay, wharf (<Chinese *chéngchúanchù* 乘船處)
čəwčəŋ housebug, bedbug (<Chinese *chòuchóng* 臭蟲)
čə:s eggplant (<Chinese *qiézi* 茄子)
či unit of length, 33.3cm (<Chinese *chǐ* 尺)
čin tight, tawt
čibǰibje to stop up, to close
čičə car (<Chinese *qìchē* 汽車)
čičə bajgə or station, terminal, stop (<Chinese *qìchē* 汽車 'car'+Dagur **bajgə or** 'stopping place')
čiče: diligent
čičibje to stab, to pierce
čičirbje to have diarrhea

čiga:n white
čigan čolo: lime (literally 'white stone'). See also **əʒbo:š** 'lime'.
čiga:n xolorda:n white poplar
čigərbje to go round
čik ear
čik magal earflap
čiki larč earlobe
či:bje to shave
čidjen dictionary (<Chinese *cīdiǎn* 詞典)
čočbje to be surprised
čočo suddenly
čočoŋ violent
čočoŋ banin violent
čočor length, lengthwise, vertical
čočor xor angle
čojə:ŋgə concave
čolo: stone
čomo: cup, glass
čoŋgulə pail, bucket
čoŋko window (<Chinese *chūanghu* 窓戶)
čos blood
čo:ribje to leak, (for blood) to bleed
čugə:rbje to spin
čulč gall bladder
čulə: empty
čulə: šid wisdom teeth
čulə: xi:bje to empty (literally 'to make space')
čun unit of length, 3.33cm (<Chinese *cùn* 寸)
ču:č chisel
ču:dəŋ match (<Chinese *qǔdēng* 取燈)
ču:gin reason
ču:rču chick
čwa:g military personnel, soldier (<Manchu *coohaj*)
čwa:g əkda officer
čwa:g jirig military

čwa:g or military camp
čwa:gorin sovereign, monarch
čwa:ka moss
čwa:ši dirt, filth
čwə: one of the Dagur-Mongolian units of length which is a distance between the tips of the outstretched thumb and middle finger)

D

-d in, to
dabgur double
dagalga:bje to guide
dagor xu: Dagur people
dagje again
dagje madən next
dajb lid
dajən war
dajf doctor (<Chinese *dàifū* 大夫)
dajli: root, foundation, base
dajn da:lbje operations
dajnšaŋ now, present
dajoku sweet
dal seventy
dalan seventy (as an attribute)
dali: sea, ocean
dali: čwa:g navy
dali: kəči seashore, beach, coast, seaside
dali:bje to stretch out
daŋgə tobacco
daŋgə o:bje to have a smoke
darbje to oppress
dardbje to be closed
darəm waist (<Manchu *darama*)
dargonda sparrow
darijə taste flat

darše: oppression
darše:bje to exploit, to oppress, to suppress, to repress
daršul salty, briny
dasbje to treat, to cure
daw sound, voice
daw garbje to sound
dawdbje to read (aloud)
dawlbje to go over, to cross over
dawrjəbje to imitate
dawrka:bje to complete
da:č before, hitherto
da:č mədəl experience
da:ga colt
da:san society
da:t (saddle) girth, cinch
dəbtlə:n biography, notebook
dəbsəgə bur blanket
dəgi: bird
dəgši slick, smooth
dəmbəl very, the most
dəmbəl ičikən rarely, seldom (literally 'very little')
dəmbəl sajn best
dəmbəl xordoŋ faster
dənǰən lamp (<Chinese *dēngzhǎn* 燈盞), electric lamp
dənǰən ila:n light
dənǰən to:s lamp oil
dəŋz stool, backless seat (<Chinese *dèngzi* 凳子)
dərdbje to fly
dərdəgə ačikča:n squirrel (Sciurus vulgaris coreae, 'flying rat')
dərəb pillow
dərə:tən bəjx the first ten days of a month
dərgədə order
dərgše:bje to stand in line, to stand in row, to arrange
dərg xoda: low price
dərǰə: mattress

dəw[1] unit of capacity, ten liters (<Chinese *dǒu* 斗)
dəw[2] younger sibling, nephew, niece
dəwnər younger brothers and sisters
dəwsbje to spread bedding, to make a bed
dəːdgəǰibje to ask for impossible, to be perverse
dəːgdə upward
dəːl fur clothing
dəːlbə club
dəːlbər mane
dəːr xodaː high price
dəːrbəj north
dəːrətə above
dəːrəx over, above
dəːrəg šid upper teeth
dəːri konšur upper lip
dilgwə fly (<Manchu *derhuwe, derguwe*), Cf Buteha **dilwəː** '蒼蠅' in Enhebatu et al. (1984: 283).
diloː reins
diːŋz čoloː cornerstone
djal dotbje to be late
djalǰite to belong to, to be affiliated
djaːz plate (<Chinese *diézi* 碟子)
djen electricity (<Chinese *diàn* 電)
djenbaw telegram (<Chinese *diànbào* 電報)
djenhwa telephone (<Chinese *diànhuà* 電話)
djenhwa twə telephone number (<Chinese *diànhuà* 電話 'telephone'+Dagur **twə** 'number')
djenšiŋ snack, confectionary (<Chinese *diǎnxin* 點心)
djentərəg trolley car, electric car (<Chinese *diàn* 電 'electric'+Dagur **tərəg** 'vehicle')
djur bed
djuːrt birch. According to Enhebatu et al. (1984: 292), its Buteha form is **ʧɑːlbɑːn** '白樺樹'.
djuːrt bakard birch tree mushroom. Cf. Enhebatu et al. (1984: 69) **bɑkərt** '木耳'.

dogulәŋ lame person
dolgje wave
dolodər sar July (literally 'the seventh month')
dolo: xot the Ursa Major (literally 'seven star')
dolo:bje to lick
dolo: seven
dor ceremony, ritual, requirements of etiquette, manners, propriety
dor jos ceremony, ritual
dor xi:bje to greet, to make an obeisance
dorodogolǰibje to chatter
dorug uwe: stingy
dosbje to drop
dotor ǰugu secret
dotor korgobje to ruminate
dotord awbje to include
do:rk to become full
duč forty
dučdər fortieth
dučə:r xulu: over forty
dučin forty (as an attribute)
dugə:bje to remove
dugurbje to become full
duka gate (<Manchu *duka*)
duləgə gaǰir ferry
dulə:bje to pass, to get ahead of, to cross, to ferry, to pass by, to go through
dulə:səŋ elapsed, past
dun ton (through Chinese *dūn* 吨)
dur[1] toward
dur[2] sign, shape
durbulǰ square, perfect square
durəbje to sell
durəldəǰ awbje to buy
durə:ŋk saddle cushion

duršar figure, appearance
durub four
durubdəːr fourth
durubdəːr sar (literally 'the fourth month')
durubiː nək one fourths, a quarter
duruk cord, rope, belt
durum xəmǰəːlbje to measure
durwər direction
duːrbje to become full
duːrgəbje to fill
duːrsəŋ full
duːruk pair
nək duːruk a pair
dwandar bəjx the second ten days of a month
dwandəx in the middle of, between, middle
dwandi nasti xuː middle aged person
dwaŋkə[1] gouard (<Chinese *dōngguā* 冬瓜)
dwaŋkə[2] watermelon (<Manchu *dungga*)
dwar dərǰəː rug
dwaraːtə below
dwaraːtən bəjx the last ten days of a month
dwarbəj south
dwarəx below
dwarəg konšur lower lip
dwarəg soː small of the back
dwarəg šid lower teeth
dwarəgd downward
dwarəgəd sawbje to sink, to go to the bottom
dwarəlbje to get accustomed to, to be habituated to, to like, to consent, to enjoy, to like
dwaruweː to dislike
dwatbje[1] to leave
dwatbje[2] to stay, to remain
dwatər bəjčirəː inside
dwatər bəjd inside

dwatər bəjx inside
dwatərəgəd inward
dwatərəx inside
dwə brook, stream, watercourse. (<Ewenki *dɔ:*)
dwə kəč riverside
dwəǰən surplus, over plus

ə

əbəldbje insufficient
əbər difficult, hard, weak
əbər bajna (One) is flexible, tender, supple
əbər uǰbje to despise, to contempt
əbərin weak point
əčək few, little
əčək agaračig at least
əčək bolbje to decrease
əčək karšo: slightly bitter, bitterish
əčəkčir rare, sparse
əčig kəwk father and son
ədə: already, right now. See also **mən ədə:** for 'right now'.
ədə: bas still
ədə:jə:r after a little while
əgəčig ǰə: parents and children
əgnər woman
əjgən donkey
əjmər such like, like this
əjmər xi: Do like this!
əjnədbje to smile, to laugh
əjtəl not yet
əǰəl grade
əǰənč judge
əǰə:təŋ ǰaka souvenir
əǰə:təŋ udur commemoration day
əǰibje to keep, to remember
əǰin king

əǰin əmgun queen (wife of a king), queen consort
əǰin hafən minister (cabinet member)
əǰin kəwk prince
əǰo:kin part
ək head (body part)
ək ori: xu: chief, leader
əkda bajlga:bje to elect (literally 'to institute or to let be a leader')
əkəlbje to be started, to lead, to start
əkəlč overtop, excellent
əkə: elder sister of a younger brother
əkiš elder sister of a younger sister
əkiš dəw sisters (literally 'elder sister and younger sibling')
əki: xald dandruff, scurf
əkləg gaǰir origin
əklə:či guide, fugleman
əkmə more, special, even more, fully, enough
əkmə sajn better
əkmə xordoŋ fastest
əl onion (<Manchu *elu*)
əlbug ərən leisure (time)
ələgə mo:d fishing rod
ələr owl
ələrdə bat (animal)
əlgəbje to hang, to suspend
əlgəgə toga: hanging kettle
əlgəgə mo:d fishing rod
əlgəŋk mo:d fishing rod
əlgəŋk xila:s fish line
əlundje upper outer garment, jacket
əm medicine
əmbərbje to collapse
əməl before
əməl bəj opposite side
əməl bəjd at front side

əməl šid incisive teeth (Loan translation of Chinese 前牙)
əmələ: to the front
əmələg sar last month
əməsbje to wear (glasses, ring, shoes, hat)
əmə:l saddle
əmə:l toko saddle cushion
əmgə old woman, wife
əmgun wife, female
əmgun bog doe
əmgun əǰin queen
əmgun gəri: əǰin hostess, mistress
əmguŋ təmə: camel cow
əmgun ujldəč maid
əmgun xu: female, woman
əmudə:čibje to go in advance of
ən this
ən bəj this side
ən bəjd hither
ən sar this month
ən šiŋči this week
ən udur today
ən xo:n this year
əndə:r from here
əndur today
əndul these
ənə: offspring
ənə:r ordon once, one day (literally 'before this time'), up to now
ənə:r xwajn from now on
ənə:r xwajnda: later, lately (literally 'after this time'), future
əŋgəl vast, extensive, spacious, wide
əŋgəl sana:te generous
əŋgəl təŋgəl generous
əŋglər slow
ərbje[1] to look for, to search for

ərbje[2] to lure, to tempt
ərbje[3] to wave, to gesture
ərču: chest
ərdbje to break, to destroy, to be destroyed, to tear
ərdəm magic
ərəj evening, Good evening!
ərəj buda: supper
ərəjku evening
ərən time, period, season
ərg male
ərgun husband
ərgun bog stag, buck
ərgun morj gelding
ərgun təmə: camel stallion, male camel
ərgun xu: male, man
ərgə:bje[1] to give, to offer, to dedicate
ərgə:bje[2] to improve, to lift, to raise, to move
ərgis necklace
ərkibje to discard, to throw
ərnin sonobje to delay
əršə:bje to treat, to entertain
əru: jaw, chin
əru: jas jawbone
əru: sagal mustache, beard
əšigə: uncle (father's younger brother)
əšikegə bajt responsibility, duty
əšikegə ujl duty, mission
ətbje to win
ətər ǰalo: bridegroom
ətərdbje to lose, defeat
ətgo: great, grand
əwd door
əwdi: darbje to close the door
əwdi: maŋgəlč intel of a door
əwdi: nə:bje to open the door

əwdbje to be ill, to be in pain, to hurt
əwə: mother, mom
əwlən cloud
əwlənti cloudy (weather)
əwr[1] horn
əwr[2] illness
əwr dasagə or hospital (literally 'place for the curing of illness')
əwr təjǰəlbje to fall ill, to be sick
əwr xor corner
əwrkəbje to see off, to send off
əwrti bolbje to fall ill
əws grass
əwsi: xur sprout, bud
əws čaričigə ogal weeding hoe
əws kjəws straw mat
əws kurk straw rope
əws kwa:ns basket
əwsbje to grow
əwx fat
əʒbo:š lime (<Russian известь [izvest^{j}]). See also **čigan čolo:** 'lime'.

Ə :

ə:rədərdbje to be torn
ə:rǰ banǰibje to be lonely
ə:rǰ boska:bje to wake up
ə:rt early

F

fa punish (<Chinese *fá* 罰)
fej (writing) brush (<probably Chinese *bǐ* 筆)
fej os Chinese ink (<probably Chinese *bǐ* 筆 'brush'+Dagur **os** 'water')

fejǰi airplane (<Chinese *fēijī* 飛機)
fən minute (60 seconds) (<Chinese *fēn* 分). See also **mino:t.**
fənz insane person, lunatic (<Chinese *fēngzi* 瘋子)
fusbje to be developed (<Manchu *fusembi*)
forgon season (<Manchu *forgon*)
fuǰə: fate, destiny

G

gačirbje to come out, to appear
gajgərbje to cry out, to shout
gajkrəbje to cry out
gaǰir earth, land, soil, reason, rural area, place
gaǰir əǰin landlord
gaǰir njargan map (literally 'place picture', Loan translation of Chinese 地圖)
gaǰir talbje to put down to the ground
gaǰir xudulbje earthquake
gal fire
gal tərəg train (<loan translation of Chinese *huǒchē* 火車)
galdəs willow
galo: goose
ganbu cadre (<Chinese *gànbù* 幹部)
gaŋ steel (<Chinese *gāng* 鋼)
gar arm, hand
gar arkən back of the hand
gar kul hand and foot
gar kwam wrist
gar mjawčaŋ handgun, pistol
gara: xiŋge:bje to shake hands
garbje to come out, to go out, (for the sun) to rise
awld garbje to climb up a mountain
garəg earring
garga:bje to take out, to extract, to pull out
gargə əwd exit
gargod east

garičibje to depart, to go out
gašiga əwrti ukur a cattle of which one horn is missing
gašiga ku: widower
gašigad simple
gaso (for food) hot
gawl bronze, copper
gawlje african millet (<Chinese *gāoliang* 高粱)
gax pig
gaxi: mjaga pork
ga:dig garden
ga:go: crow (<Manchu *gaha*). Cf. Buteha **ga:ɣʷ**
gelbje to drive away
gəč direction, -ward
gədgun biše vague, unclear
gədgwə overtop, excellent
gəgə:ŋ kuku light blue
gəjgə wajr dawn, daybreak
gəǰig hair of one's head
gəǰigə: xanda:bje to have one's hair cut
gəngo: evident, clear
gənsəŋ cold
gənsəŋ banja be melancholy
gənsəŋ bolbje to get cold, to get cool
gər house, home
gərgibje to pick, to gather
gəri: baǰərx stairs, steps
gəri: də:rin roof
gəri: də:rc kartəs ceiling
gəri: dwatəx inside the house
gəri: əmuləx in front of the house
gəri: gəsin building
gəri: twə: room number
gəri: wajrin around the house
gəri: xu: owner, master (literally 'house's person')
gəri: xwajnix behind the house

gərkbje to step on
gəsbje to melt
gətəs intestines, rectum
gəw mare
gəsərbje to reprimand
gəːrdbje to fall, to lose
gjeːgə red copper
gilbje to set free, to release
giŋgulbje to respect, to revere, to be patronymic
gjad sword
gjaloŋk clear
gjanbje to carry, to convey, to transport
gjaː county, street, shop
gjaː thief
gjaːgər thief
gjaːnəlč quarrel
gjaːnəljbje to be noisy
goč thirty
gočin thirty (as an attribute)
gočin minoːt thirty minute
gočoːr boots
gočoːr xuluː over thirty
gočdaːr thirtieth
gojbje to ask, to request
gojrənč beggar
golčbje to lock
goljar stove, brick stove
gonduləbje to cheat
gondulərdbje to be cheated
goŋanjy police station (<Chinese *gōngānjú* 公安局)
gorgod chain
goːmdbje to complain, to be sorry
gub all, whole, entire
gubiːn[1] completely, entirely
gubiːn[2] not at all

gububje to wither
guč friend, comrade
gučulbje to govern
gugu honey bee
gujbje to run
gujǰ garbje to rush out, to run out
gujǰəč errand boy, messenger
gujləs apricot
guǰe: stomach
guǰe: gətəs duodenum
guŋs company
gurčugu ring
gurə:s animal, game
gurə:s awlabje hunting, to hunt
gurə:s kul hoof of an animal (literally 'animal leg')
gurə:s mək breast of an animal
gurun country, state
gurun əǰin king
gusko: wolf
gu: glass
gu: čomo drinking glass
gu:nibje to cry, to bark, to bellow
gu:rbje to understand, to realize
gu:rulgəbje to explain
gu:rultek waterfall
gu:z box
gwač ram, seed ram
gwaj thigh
gwaj mjaga calf of the leg
gwajdaŋ late, slow
gwali calendar (<Chinese *guàl* 掛曆)
gwan unit of weight, about 4 kilograms (<Chinese *guàn* 貫)
gwantu can (<Chinese *guàntou* 罐頭)
gwaŋbo: broadcasting (<Chinese *guǎngbō* 廣播)
gwarba:r durbud from three to four

gwarbə three
gwarbədin gwarəb three each
gwarbəlǰi triangle
gwarbən three (as an attribute)
gwarbən ǰaw three hundreds
gwarbən madən three times
gwarbən mjaːŋga three thousands
gwarbən xuː three persons
gwarbiː nəkiː one thirds
gwarəbdaːr third
gwarəbdaːr sar March (literally 'the third month')
gwəl flour, powder
gwəŋ deep
gwəːglin saroːl new moon

H

hančəŋ Seoul (<Chinese *hànchēng* 漢城)
hančəŋəːr bəːǰiŋd from Seoul to Beijing
hwasəŋ peanut (<Chinese *huāshēng* 花生)

I

ibaːgə monster
ičibje to go
ičikən čoməl group, party
ičikən dəgiː young bird
ičikən gwaj calf of the leg
ičikən ǰabj small boat
ičikən kəwk the second son (literally 'little son')
ičikən sagal mustache
ičikən šurkəl little devil, goblin
ičikən ugun the second daughter (literally 'little daughter')
idbje to eat
idəː food, provisions
idəgə ǰaka foodstuff

idəlgəːbje to feed
ig big
ig ačaː father's elder brother (literally 'big father')
ig əwəː wife of father's elder brother (literally 'big mother')
ig əǰin emperor (literally 'great master'), Russian Tsar
ig əwəːčəː small pox
ig guːz big box
ig ǰaga lapel of a Dagur upper garment
ig kəwk the eldest son (literally 'big child')
ig or capital (literally 'big place')
ig sagal beard
ig šid molar tooth (Loan translation of Chinese 大牙)
ig šiptal gravel (literally 'big sand')
ig širəː large rope
ig tərgul highway, main road
ig togaː wok (literally 'big kettle'), caldron
ig ugun the eldest daughter (literally 'big daughter')
ig xəjn typhoon (literally 'big wind')
ig xorolči meeting, gathering, assembly
ig xuː adult
igirəbje to increase
ilaːn light, glare
ilaːn gargabje to shine, to glimmer
ilaːntbje to shine, to glimmer, to begin to grow light
ilaːnte bright
ilaːn tosbje to shine, to illuminate
ilga flower
ilte polite, courteous
imaː goat
inčon elbow
inəːdbje to smile
inəːte uproarious, clamorous, funny
inhaŋ bank (<Chinese *yínháng* 銀行)
ir ninety
irbje to come

irən ninety (as an attribute)
irgən tərgul public road, main road, highway
is nine
isdə:r sar September (literally 'the ninth month')
isən nine (as an attribute)
isəl lizard
isugu kid (of a goat)
itəgəbje to believe, to trust
itgəl uwe: doubtful, suspicious
itgəməl religion

I :

i:ljaw beverage (<Chinese *yǐnliào* 飲料)
i:n grain
i:ndə:bje to grind, to powder
i:z soap (<Chinese *yízi* 胰子)

J

ja:ba gambling
jadarga poverty
jadə:ga poor
jajəguj stammerer, stutterer
jalgəbje to compare, to select, to elect, to select
jamər what, what kind of
jamər čaga:r ordon before a certain time
jamər ərən when (literally 'what time?')
jamər jamər such and such
jari:bje to ridicule, to sneer
jas bone
jawbje to leave, to walk
    jaw ǰəla Go straight!
jawgan čwa:ga infantry
je:nčoko pocket
je:nwi potatoes

jobdbje to advance
jogor bottom
jom xi:bje to work, to make something, to do something, to work
josoko lock (<perhaps from Chinese *yuèshi* 鈅匙)
jo: what
jo: bje what is it?
jo:je: post office (<perhaps from Chinese *yóujú* 郵局)
jo:kə how many, how much
jo:kə nas How old? (literally 'what age?')
jo:kə two: quantity
jo:nda: why, what for
jugə: why

J

ǰab chance, opportunity
ǰačirdbje to be broken
ǰaga collar
ig ǰaga lapel of a Dagur upper garment
ǰagəlda itchy
ǰagolbje to scratch
ǰago:lbje to feel a tickle
ǰagos fish
ǰagos awlač fisherman
ǰagos əlgəbje to fish
ǰagos əlgəŋk fish hook
ǰagos uləgəbje fishing
ǰagos xač harpoon, fish spear
ǰaka thing
ǰakolobje to break off
ǰaləg mountain valley, brook. See also **dwə** for 'brook'.
ǰalagaji: xəjn valley wind
ǰalaŋgə to fall behind
ǰalbər promise
ǰalgabje to tie, to bind, to connect, to join, to continue

ǰalgəbje to be careful, to restrain
ǰalgalčlgabje to continue
ǰalgibje to swallow
ǰalko: lazy
ǰalo: young
ǰalo: xu: young man
ǰambur dish cloth, floor cloth, dust cloth (<Chinese *zhǎnbùr* 撣布兒)
ǰannə to be in debt
ǰaŋ unit of length, 3.33m (<Chinese *zhàng* 丈)
ǰar sixity
ǰaran sixty (as an attribute)
ǰarbje pursuit, to pursue, to chase
ǰarddəŋ pregnant
ǰarləg order, command
ǰaw[1] Chinese monetary unit, one hundredths of one yuan (<Chinese *jiǎo* 角)
ǰaw[2] hundred
ǰaw tum million
ǰaw tumun tum ten billion
ǰawbje to bite, to chew
ǰawhuj church (<Chinese *jiàohuì* 教會)
ǰawǰe: heel
ǰawǰe: səj slippers
ǰawǰox bit, gag
ǰawlbje[1] to pass over, to hand over
ǰawlbje[2] to pay
ǰawlǰ awbje to receive, to take over, to take responsibility
ǰawša:ŋǰi camera (<Chinese *zhàoxiànhj* 照相機)
ǰa:čibje to appeal, to propagate
ǰa:lan for, in order to, about
tawl barjgə ǰa:lan to catch a hare
ǰa:ndal song
ǰa:nda:bje to sing
ǰa:rbje to point at (to)

ǰabj boat
ǰabj sawgə or dock
ǰešgən letter (<Manchu *jasigan*)
ǰe:kə similar
ǰe:kən proper, fit
ǰe:kən biše improper
ǰe:lbje to lend
ǰe:lebje to borrow
ǰə[1] Well! Right! Sure!
ǰə sawkəna Well, please sit down!
ǰə:[2] nephew including ego's sister's son
ǰə: ugun niece including ego's sister's daughter
ǰəla: straightly
ǰəwd dream
ǰəwdəlbje to dream
ǰəwlən mild, gentle
ǰəwt rust
ǰiči machinery (<Chinese *jīqì* 機器)
ǰiga money, cash
ǰiga ǰaka property (literally 'money (and) thing')
ǰiga olbje to earn money
ǰigati boldaŋ rich people (literally 'became having money')
ǰilǰima swallow
ǰilǰima ga:go: raven
ǰin unit of weight (<Chinese *jīn* 斤)
ǰiŋča police officer (<Chinese *jǐngchá* 警察)
ǰiŋčaǰy police station (<Chinese *jǐngcháj* 警察局)
ǰirex procession, parade
ǰirig class
ǰirtgə dazzling, glaring
ǰogobje to suffer hardships, to take the trouble of, to suffer
ǰoŋ clock (<Chinese *zhōng* 鍾)
ǰorəm bajt cause
ǰo:bje to store, to preserve
ǰo:rbje to face, to go toward

ǰudsəŋ skinny, slim, lean
ǰuge: habit
ǰugə:bje to repair, to revise
ǰugubje[1] right, correct
ǰugubje[2] interesting
ǰuǰa:n thick
ǰulə:n book, novel
ǰulǰugi: tilt, slant
ǰuŋggwə: China (<Chinese *zhōngguó* 中國)
ǰurgo: six
ǰurgo:də:r sar June (literally 'the sixth month')
ǰurgo:ji: xojorin two sixths
ǰurug heart, mind (literally 'heart')
ǰurug uwe: timid
ǰurugte courageous
ǰus color
ǰusun[1] sour
ǰusun[2] appearance
ǰusun adəl resembled (literally 'appearance is same')
ǰusun su: yoghurt
ǰusunčur astringent
ǰu: needle
ǰu: səbje to thread a needle
ǰu: xila:s needle work (literally 'needle (and) thread' as Chinese 針線 'needle (and) thread > needle work')
ǰu:gu ǰiǰa meaning
ǰu:ləkən soft
ǰu:r[1] pair
ǰu:r[2] water deer, hydropotes inermis (Consultant used this word for 'roe deer' in Basic conversation part. But he said he did not know the word for 'roe deer' in the vocabulary part.)
ǰu:r ima: antelope, gazelle (literally 'water deer goat')
ǰu:r mjaga meat of the hydropotes inermis
ǰwad ərən dry season

ǰwa: brick

K

kabčoŋko tongs, tweezers
kabǰebje to insert
kadbje to solidify, to congeal, to coagulate
kajč scissors
kajčila:bje to shear (literally 'to cut with scissors')
kajkarsəŋ daw shout, battle cry
kakorə:bje to tighten, to fasten
kakra: chicken, hen
kalije:r ilga wild leek flower
kanči sleeve
kanǰa:l vest
kanjər bəj nearby, around
kantka cheap
karč beside
kare:sin kerosene (<Russian керо'шин)
karə: gər guard post
karə:č watchman
karjabje to jump, to leap
karko:bje[1] to insert
karko:bje[2] to pound, to hull
karmabje to envelope
karmičibje to support
kartəz floor, board
kaso: iron
kaso: bačilgabje to refine iron
kaso: tarkəbje to temper iron
kaso: tərgul railroad
kaš čolo: jade
kaši gər warehouse
kata: salt
kato:[1] expensive
kato:[2] hard, tough

kato: mjaga tough meat
kato:[3] girl, maiden
kato: omol granddaughter
kawčun old
kawčun ǰaka old thing
kawəl turtle
ka:lardbje to be changed
ka:ndə rice, rice plant. See also **xa:ndə.**
ka:ndə buda: cooked rice. See also **xa:ndə buda:.**
kertos honey
kəč[1] edge, margin
kəč gaǰir boundary, border
kəč[2] shore, beach, riverside
kəčə:r circle
kəčig udur the day before yesterday
kəčigə:r ordon udur two days before yesterday
kəču: difficult, hard
kəǰin wall
kəǰin njargan sculpture
kəko doll
kəlguj deaf and dumb (person)
kərčibje to chop, to slice, to cut
kərdbje to lie down
kərǰə: park
kəsəgəl very
kəsəgul ig very big
kəsəgul ičikən very small
kəsəgəl očok very little, very few
kəšinjə:bje to neigh (<Kazakh *kisine-* 'to neigh')
kətəs scar, wound, hurt, injury, syphilis
kəwk child, young of an animal
kəwkur babies, children
kə:kə cat
kə:kəl moment
kə:l belly

kəːl unsbje to starve
kəːl unssəŋ starved
kəːnibje to be proud, to brag
kəːnilčbje to boast, to assume airs
kəːniːbje to praise, to applaud, to admire, to marvel at
kəːr steppe, wilderness. See also *xəːr*
kəːr tal steppe, wilderness. See also *xəːr tal*
kəːriː gax wild boar (literally 'steppe pig')
kəːriː nagos wild duck
kəːrken pitiful, pitiable
kičəːbje to be careful, to be cautious, to defend
kimč finger nail, hoof of an animal. toenail
kiməːnte to hate
kiməːndbje to guard, to protect
kirəː saw
kjaːloŋ gər room
kobgorbje to save, to rescue
kočibje to wrap up, to roll, to surround
kodər well (for water)
koldox half
kombəl wormwood
kombi čakolobje to cut off
kombibje to fold
konjər load, burden freight
kono a day and a night, 24 hours
konšur lips, beak
koŋgoː deaf
koŋgoːbje to become deaf
koŋkəbje to carve
kor poison
korgirbje to snore
korklabje to parboil
korkobje to add
koton castle, urban area, city
koton gaǰir city, urban area

koːklin about, approximately
kuč power
kučiŋ xuː farm hand, slave
kučirbje to arrive, to reach
kučulbje to study, to learn
kudəː tala steppe
kugən cotton, cotton cloth
kujčebje to catch up, to take over
kujs navel
kujtəŋ cold. See also /xujtəŋ/
kuk blue
kul foot, leg, hoof
kul njušuge barefoot
kul tərəg bicycle (literally 'foot vehicle')
kul xoroː toe
kulčeːbje to wait
kuldər frying pan, skillet
kuliː kwaːm ankle
kuliː wal sole of a foot
kuliːn intensity
kulkbje to parch
kulkəgə kaːndə parched rice
kurbje sufficient
kurd wheel
kurgə sanaː goal, purpose (literally 'reaching thought')
kurgoːr corner
kurmilt eyelashes
kurub lamb
kutəl dəːz tether (literally 'pulling rope')
kutuləːbje to lead, to haul, to drag
kuː person, human being. See also **xuː**.
kwaŋgard bell (musical instrument), bell
kwaŋgra pond
kwart hunting knife
kwaːnz basket (<Chinese *kuāngzi* 筐子)

kwəːduː fool, idiot, stupid, foolish
kwəːrkiː əljibje to commiserate with, to sympathize with
kwəːm neck, throat, pharynx
kwəːm xəl uvula

L

labaː bugle, trumpet (<Chinese *lǎba* 喇叭)
largjə complex
larč leaf
larkibje to shake
larklaːbje to winnow, to fan
lartlom balaga clay, mud
lartoːbje to attach, to paste
laː candle (<Chinese *là* 蠟)
laːwa ear, spike
ləgdəːbje to sharpen
lək Chinese ink stick (<perhaps from Chinese *mò* 墨 earlier time)
lənt bridle, halter (<Chinese *lóngtou* 籠頭)
ləz mule (<Chinese *luózi* 騾子)
lir plum (<Chinese *lǐr* 李兒)
ljaw feed stuff, forage, fodder (<Chinese *liào* 料)
lom or monastery (literally 'sutra place')
loːŋko bottle
lukuŋku mortar
luːrin strong point
lwə gong (<Chinese *lúo* 鑼)
lyšiŋ trip, travel (Chinese *lǚxíng* 旅行)

M

madəlbje to finish, to be finished
madən time, occasion
madin extent, dimensions
magal hat

majma deal, trade (<Chinese *màimǎi* 賣買)
majma or shop, store
majma xuː merchant
majmaŋ gaǰir market, bazar
majmaŋ xoral fair, temple fair
majməŋ ǰaka merchandise, goods
majs wheat (<Chinese *màizi* 麥子)
maǰin carpenter (<Chinese *mùjiàng* 木匠)
malǰiŋ xuː baldheaded person
maltbje to dig
mana fog
manǰ ajman The Manchu (literally 'Manchu ethnics')
maŋgəl forehead
maŋgələm hulled millet
maŋgəlti magal cap
marbje[1] to take out, to extract, to pick, to gather
marbje[2] to fructify, to bear fruit
margil barley
martəbje to forget
maši:ne car (<Russian ма'шина [mashina])
maː uduk a while ago
maːnax ours
maːnar we (exclusive)
maːnaw agate (<Chinese *mǎnǎo* 瑪瑙)
maːtbje to bend
mədbje to know (how to do)
mədəl culture
məjs ice
məjs kartbje to refrigerate
məjs katbje to thaw
məjtbje to withdraw, to retreat
məjtəbje to spread out, to broaden
mək breast, nipple, teat
məkbje to take (milk), to suckle
mələ:bje to carry on the back

məljǐbə gambling
məlkəː frog, tree frog
mən the same, the very
mən ədəː right now
mən təjmər mostly, practically, Yes (it is.)
mən tər kəːkəl moment (literally 'exactly that moment')
mərčgəj bent, crooked, wrong
mərčgəj əwrti ukur a cattle of which horns are crooked
mərčgəj xilaːs curved line, curve
mərkjbje to wrist, to pry
məːndəx here, here and there
məːŋgəːdi hawk
mi miter (through Chinese *mǐ* 米)
milukbje to creep, to crawl
minaː whip
miniːx mine
minoːt minute (<Russian минута [mi'nut^{h}a]. See also **fən.**
miŋšinpjen postcard (<Chinese *míngxìnpiàn(r)* (明信片(兒))
miːltbje to float, to be adrift
mjaga meat, flesh
mjaga bolgabje to cook meat
mjaga kulkbje to roast meat
mjaga xajrbje to roast meat
mjaw[1] second (<Chinese *miǎo* 秒). See also **sikoːnt.**
mjaw[2] shrine (<Chinese *miào* (廟)
mjawčaŋ gun (<perhaps from Chinese *niǎoqiāng* 鳥槍 literally 'bird rifle')
mjaːŋga thousand
mjaːŋga tum ten million
mjaːrbje to low, to moo, to bleat
mjenbo bread (<Chinese *miànbāo* 麵包)
mjorgəbje to wrist, to pry
mog snake
mogulen bullet (<Manchu *muhaliyan* 'ball, round projectile')
monjo monkey (<Manchu *monio*)

morj horse
morj təǰəːgə horse breeder
morj tərəg carriage, coach
morjiː ək horse's head
morjiː koːlbje to harness a horse
morjiː kul hoof of a horse (literally 'leg of a horse')
morjiː suː mare milk
morjiː taka horseshoe
morjiː xoreː stable
morjti čwaːga cavalry
moː bad, not good
moː baninte ill-natured
moː boldaŋ become bad
moː durte ugly (literally 'have bad appearance')
moː ǰaka bad thing
moː uǰubje to leer at
moː waːte ill-smelling, stinking
moːd tree
moːd čoŋgulə wooden tub, 樺皮桶 (tub made of birch bark)
moːd ǰabt wood
moːd kartəs wooden board
moːd kənkə cucumber
moːd san wooden comb
moːd tuleː charcoal
moːdiː xaldin bark of a tree
moːdiː xurin branch of a tree, bough
mudur dragon
muŋgu ǰiga coin (literally 'silver money')
muŋk silver
mur shoulder
mur river
muru muləbje to carry on the shoulder
muː unit of extent, 6.667 are (<Chinese *mǔ* 畝)
muːnibje to low, to moo

N

nagos duck, tame duck
naǰir ərən summer
naǰir warsəŋ onset of summer (literally 'summer has entered') (<Chinese *lìxià* 立夏. One of the 24 seasonal divisions which usually falls on May 5 or 6)
najm eight
najmdəːr sar August (literally 'the eighth month')
naj eighty
najn eighty (as an attribute)
najne father's sister
najnča: husband of father's sister (literally /najne/+/ača:/ 'father')
najnəwə: father's sister (literally /najne/+/əwə:/ 'mother')
najtbje sneeze, sneezing
namər ərən autumn
namər warsaŋ onset of autumn (literally 'autumn has entered') (<Chinese *lìqīu* 立秋. one of the 24 seasonal divisions which usually falls on August 7 or 8)
nanda: beauty
nanda:kan pretty
nar sun
nar garbje sun rising, The sun rises.
nar gurun Japan (literally 'sun country')
nar wanəgə ərən dusk (literally 'the time to fall for the sun')
nar wa:nbje sunset, The sun sets.
nar xus hair
nari:m hay, dried grass
nari:n əws hay, dried grass
nari:n gətəs small intestine
nari:n kwamti čomo: liquor glass goblet
nari:n jas fish bone
nari:n xubdəl inner chaff, inner bran
nari:n xus feathers

nari:n xwə tiny, fine
nari:nkan slender, fine, thin, slim
nas age
nawr[1] harrow
nawr[2] lake
nawri: kəč lakeside
naxčo: mother's brother, husband of mother's sister
naxčo:wə: mother's sister, wife of mother's brother (literally '/naxčo/ + /əwə:/ mother')
na:čilabje[1] to depend on, to rely on, to lean against
na:čilabje[2] to lie on one's face
na:dbje to play
na:dəgə ǰaka toy, plaything
na:dəl play, drama, entertainment
na:dəl ərdəm game, play
na:dəl or theater (literally 'play place')
na:dəl gaǰir activity center
na:dəl xore: festival
na:nda bolbje to be cured of, to be healed
nəgəbje to weave, to knit
nəgə:ldəbje to invite
nək one
nək čag one hour
nək madən one time
nək xu: one person
nək gəri: xu: spouse (literally 'person of one house')
nək sar January (literally 'the one month')
nəkən nəkən individually, respectively
nəkənd together
nəkənd awbje to carry along
nəkdə:r first
nəkdə:r sar January (literally 'the first month')
nəkdin now and then
nəki:n baga some
nəkti nək one each

nəktin xojor two each
nələbje to become
nəm bow
nəm som bow and arrow
nəm som xarbəbje to shoot an arrow
nəm tatbje arrow shooting, to shoot an arrow
nəmbəs quilt, coverlet
nəmbubje to cover, to put over
nəmi: tatas bowstring
nəmpbje to build
nəmpən hut, hovel, shanty, awning
nəndbje to burn, to catch fire, to ignite
nəndəgə tulje fuel
nənəm once, in case of
nər name, term
nər xərgə: signature
nərčə:bje to hatch (out)
nərdje famous
nərte honorable, famous
nəruwe: xoro: fourth finger, ring finger
nəwbje to move (residence)
nə:bje to open
nə:mbəl shawl
nə:rdbje to be opened
nid eye
nid ars eyelid
nidan last year
niŋgə thin
nišimalčbje to struggle
nidi: dwa:tər eyeball
nidi: njombus tear
nidi: xarə pupil, apple of the eye
ni:bje to blow one's nose
njadəm face, surface
njadəm duro: mask

njadəm jas cheekbone
njadəm ogagə pən washbasin (literally 'face washing basin'. **pən** from Chinese *pén* 盆)
njadəm sagal whiskers
njadəm šarə cheek
njakan Chinese people (<Manchu nikan)
njalaka the last born
njalaka kəwk the youngest son
njalaka no:n the youngest son (literally 'the youngest boy')
njalaka ugun the youngest daughter (literally 'the youngest girl')
njargan picture, photograph
njodrog fist
njombus saliva, spit, to spit
njoro: crossbeam, girder
njos snivel
njos nji:bje to blow one's nose
njo:glə tatbje to raise the shoulders up (perhaps with pride)
njurbje to picture, to draw, to write
njušuge naked
nox dog
nox ǰagos pike
noga: vegetable
noga: kərǰə: vegetable garden
noga:n look like
xwar warsəŋ noga:n It looks like it has rained.
noga:n durte look like
xwar warsəŋ noga:n durte It looks like it has rained.
nojtəŋ wet, damp
nojtəŋ gaǰir marsh (literally 'wet place'). See also **osti gaǰir**.
nojo:rbje to soak, to penetrate, to get wet, to be exposed to the rain, snow, etc.
nolj zero (<Russian ноль [nolʲ], нуль [nulʲ])
nomer number (<Russuan номер [nomer])
notəg people, crowd of (people)

no:n male child
no:n dəw younger brother (literally 'boy younger sibling')
no:n kəwk son (literally 'boy child')
nugu cave, hole
nugu maltbje to gnaw a hole
nugui: or cave
nugur spouse, wife or husband
nugwə guntə next year
nuŋkuləbje to throw on (clothes)
nuršubje to pass
nuršusəŋ anjake passing traveller, passer-by
nuršusəŋ ərən old days, bygone days

O

ob[1] pair
ob[2] share
ob[3] story, numbered floor, flight (of a stair)
nək ob one story
oba:či disturbance
obə: line, row
obo:lbje to pile up
očokok little, few
ogal hoe, adz
oga:bje to wash, to wash clothes
ogw brain
ogw jas skull
ojbje to sew, to patch up
ojərəl dish, food, cuisine
ojərəlgər recipe
ojoŋko important (<Manchu *oyonggo*)
ojrəl textile
ojrəl xərəg index finger
oǰubje to kiss
olbje to pick up, to find
olbur economy

olbur ǰaka harvest
olburbje to gain, to make a profit
old torogo hemp cloth
olor inhabitant
ombag gər fire place, fuel hole
omol grandson, great-grandson
omol ugun great-granddaughter
onbje to ride
ona: vehicle, means of transportation
onč knife
onči: kir edge, blade
ondu:lənč sly
onol morj gelding (literally 'riding horse')
or[1] place, location, hell, station, terminal, stop (literally 'place')
or[2] bedding, bed clothes
orjbje to call
ordə all kinds of
ordəm gunpowder
ordin bajlgabje to maintain
ordin ičibje to substitute
ordon past, before
nək udur ordon some days ago (literally 'one day before')
orgobje to jump, to leap
orgol living being
orǰgon the year before last
orkobje to scoop up
oročen Orochen people
orsbje to flow
ort long
ort čakto: length
ort mjawčaŋ rifle
ort mo:d pole
ort xəšiti xadar scythe

ortbje to receive, to welcome, to go to meet a person on arrival
ortəra old, become old
orus Russia
orusi: gaǰir Russia (literally 'Russian soil')
os water
os bo:gə kwaŋgəra sewer
os bulukə:n water is tepid
os lo:ŋko water bottle
os xa:səŋ gaǰir bank (for water) (literally 'place where water is closed'). See also **xardəŋ os**
os xadglago:r water reservoir
osi: čačibje to sprinkle the water, to spill water
osi: kolt reed
osorč sailor
ost warbje to be submerged in the water (literally 'to enter into the water')
ost xaŋkəbje to sink in the water
osti gaǰir marsh, marsh land (literally 'watery place').

O :

o:bje to drink, to have (milk, a smoke)

P

pančibje to keep silent
paw artillery (<Chinese *pào* 砲)
pawti čwa:ga artillery (<Chinese *pào* 砲+Dagur denominal suffix **-ti**+Manchu *čwa:ga* 'soldier')
pənnəlčibje to collide
pəns tray (<Chinese *pánzi* 槃子)
pəŋšibje to destroy
pibaw (leather) bag (<Chinese *píbaō(r)* 皮包(兒))
piča musical instrument, flute (<Manchu *ficakū* 'a six-holed flute blown from one end')

piŋ unit of extent, about 3.33 square meter (<Chinese *píng* 坪)
pišiglə:bje to kick
pi:l slippery
pi:lbje to row (a boat)
pi:lǰ wanbje to slip, to skid
pjaw ticket (<Chinese *piào* 票)
polje: ball
pu:tə: grapevine (<Chinese *pútáo* 葡萄)

R

-ə:r along, from, (passing) by, than, through
-ə:r ordonə:r always

S

sad mo:d ladder
sagal beard, mustache, whiskers
saj shoes (<Chinese *xié* 鞋)
sajn good, beneficial
sajn bajna it is good
sajn ǰu:gə good habit
sajn ǰuste beautiful (literally 'having good looking appearance')
sajkan ǰus hansom appearance, good looking appearance
sajnčir biše not so good
sajr wedding ceremony
sajrin bajt happy event
sajrin xi:bje to marry, to do wedding
sajrin xorolčibje to have a banquet
sajrin udur holy day, red-letter day
sana: thought, feeling
sana: du:rbje to be satisfied
sana: kurgəbje to reward, to recompense
sana: oka: thought, idea, ideology
sana: tortbje to feel assured of, to feel relieved

sana: **uǰug** opinion
sana:ja mədəlgəbje to express
sana:jin mo: sad (literally 'mind is bad')
sanəbje[1] to think, to wish, would like to
sanəbje[2] to soar, to sail
sanǰ mədbje to be remind of, to come into mind
sannə comb
sannəbje to comb
sar month
sar toloŋ every month
saralbje to celebrate
sarb chopstick
sarča: grandfather
sardi aged, old
sardi xu: old person
sardwə: grandmother
sarəb (walking) stick
sarmilt eyebrows
saro:l moon
saro:l tukure:kən full moon (literally 'the moon is full') See also **tukure:kən saro:l**.
saro:lči eyeglasses
sataŋ sugar (<Chinese *shātáng* 砂糖)
sawbje to sit
sawgə kartəz chair
sawr plough
sa:bje to milk
sa:ǰəxə magpie
sa:nd just, just now
seriŋk match (<Russian серенка [serenka])
səbu teacher, master. (perhaps <Chinese *shīfù* 師傅 through Manchu *sefu* because Buteha form *səb* also begins with /s/ according to Enhebatu et al. (1984: 217).
sədəgər intelligent, wise
sədər history

səjl sieve, screen
səməbje to search
sərbje to wake up
səwdər shadow, movie
səwǰ jas hip bones[3)]
səwl tail
səwl xus tail feather
sə:bje[1] to thread a needle
sə:bje[2] to urine
sə:gə gaǰir toilet (literally 'place to urinate')
sə:s urine
siko:nt second (<Russian секунда [se'k^{h}unda]). See also **mjaw**.
sobǰə: lucky
sogor blind (person), one-eyed (person)
sogor gətəs vermiform appendix, blind gut
sojgalǰ ant
sojnə strange, odd
solgod left
solgod bəj left side
solguj bəjd in the left side
solguj bəra:n about, more or less (Calque from Chinese *zuǒyòu* 左右)
solgujt to the left side
soltalbje to loosen
som arrow
som ək arrowhead
somog ladle, dipper, scoop
sonsbje to hear, to listen, to follow
sonobje to delay, to extend, to prolong
sonoko delicious
sonor rubber
sonordbje to postpone, to delay
sonsəl rumor

3) Question was *kuàgǔ* 胯股 'groin' but answer was *kuàgǔ* 胯骨 'hip bones'.

sonulga:bje to stretch, to draw out
sora:čilbje to visit
sorbje to learn
sordobje to get drunk
sorəl education
sorgabje to teach
soroč pupil
soro:lbje to teach
sortan čolo: jewel, precious stone
sugu axe
sugusəŋ awr mist
sujdər dew
sujtkə little finger
suǰam corn
sumus soup
sun dwa:ndəx midnight
sun nəgə one night
sundə: night, at night
sundə: sajn Good evening!
suni: xorolč banquet, feast (literally 'evening party')
surə: skillful, intelligent, wise
su: milk
su:bje to put out (the fire)
su:lgəbje to put out (the fire)
su:lgəbje to turn off (the light)
swadəl[1] blood vessel
swadəl[2] root
swadəl tarkabje (for the pulse) to beat
swal loose
swanda garlic (<Manchu *suwanda*)
swə: armpit

Š

šabi pupil. Both Written Mongolian and Manchu have *šabi* which seems to be originated from Chinese *shāmí* 沙彌

(<Sanskrit çramaṇera). Enhebatu et al. (1984: 232) has /ʃeb/ for Buteha form.

šadbje to be able to do

šadəl ability

šadməl talent, technique

šadməl uwe: unskilled, awkward

šagabje to rub, to scrape

šalgəbje to play

šar yellow

šar ilga noga: day lily (literally 'yellow flower vegetable', which is a direct translation of Chinese *huánghuācài* 黄花菜, thus further study is needed)

šar tos butter (literally 'yellow oil')

šar ukur bull

šargal rafter

šaw ǰinǰwə small jar, pot

šawrti gaǰir muddy place

šərbəbje to touch

še:n gurun Korea (Democratic People's Republic of Korea) (<Chinese 鮮 in *cháoxiān* 朝鮮 'Korea'+Dagur **gurun** 'country')

še:nšəŋ Mister, Sir (<Chinese *xiānsheng* 先生). According to Enhebatu et al. (1984: 232), *ʃenʃin* is '(Chinese) medical doctor' in Buteha.

šəŋ unit of capacity, one liter (<Chinese *shēng* 升)

šəwx awl

šəwx ǰu: big needle

šə:r fountain, spring. See also **bula:r**.

šibgalčbje to whisper

šibtal sand

šibtal gaǰir sandy soil, desert

šid tooth

šidiz silk thread

šidiz ojrəl embroidery

šidiz tatbje to reel silk off

šige:bje to let, to force
šigje forest, wood
šil side dishes
šila:n green (<Chinese *xìlán* 細藍 according to Enhebatu et al. (1984:235))
šilbis shin
šilbje to be benumbed, to have a dull pain
šine the first day of the month
šine udur the first day of the month
šini:n xojər the second day of the month
šini:n gwarəb the third day of the month
šinwen news (<Chinese *xīnwén* 新聞)
šiŋči day of the week, week (<Chinese *xīngqī* 星期)
šiŋči durub Thursday
šiŋči gwarəb Wednesday
šiŋči ǰurgo: Saturday
šiŋči nəkdə:r udur Monday
šiŋči ta:w Friday
šiŋči udur Sunday
šiŋči xojər Tuesday
šiŋgəŋ (for soup, tea, etc.) light, mild
šiŋgəŋ xola:ŋ pink
šiŋkən fresh, new
šiŋkən bərj bride
šiŋkən ǰalo: bridegroom
šiŋkən su: fresh milk
šiŋkən xo:n new year
širbəbje to pat, to stroke over
širbis tendon, sinew
širbje to twist, to twine
širə: table
širəbǰ ta:lbje to caress
širge: wire
širt gruel, porridge
šita:bje to make a fire, to kindle, to turn on (the light)

ši: you (second person singular)
ši: ə:rt Good morning!
ši:ni:x yours (possessive pronoun of the second person singular)
ši:wəbje to worry
ši:z mat, cushions (<Chinese *xízi* 席子)
šje:n test (<Chinese *shìyàn* 試驗)
šob nurčbje to pierce
šojnǰi: radio (<Chinese *shōyīnjī* 收音機)
šol ulukəbje to refuse
šoloko simple, easy, convenient
šoltalbje to approve
šomol mosquito
šonun biše tasteless, unsavory
šoŋkobje to swim
šor pointed, sharp
šorbje to haul, to drag
šorin end, point
šorla:bje to sharpen
šo:ŋgobje to fall into, to be drowned
šo:ŋgobje to bore, to perforate
šubdəl fertilizer, trash
šuntbje to make effort, to strive
šurkəl ghost, phantom
šurkudbje to tremble
šurkul bəlbə:tje moth
šutbje to worship
šwa:rəg storm, snowstorm
šwa:rəgədi čas blizzard (literally 'stormy snow')
šwa:z brush (<Chinese *shuāzi* 刷子)

T

tabdar shelf
tačoko school (<Manchu *tačiku*)
tačokod ičibje to go to school
tago:l riddle

tajbən peaceful, comfortable, to be in well-being
taj fifty
tajn fifty (as an attribute)
tal cultivating field
talbje to put down, to place down, (for the thunder) to thunder, (for the lightening) to flash
tali: ačikča:n mole (literally 'wild mouse')
tali: činčaj wild dropwort (Dagur **tali:** 'of the steppe + Chinese *qíncài* 芹菜)
tali: əl wild onion (Dagur **tali** 'of the steppe' + Manchu *əl* 'onion', which might be a direct translation of Chinese *yěcōng* 野葱).
tali: galo: wild goose
tali: gurə:s wild animal
tali: ima: Mongolian gazelle (literally 'steppe goat')
tali: kakra pheasant
tali: kalje:r wild leek
tali: nagos wild duck
taliagor thunder
taliagor bobje: to thunder
taliagor talbje (for the lightening) to flash, to thunder
taličibje to leave, to entrust, to give something in one's custody
tana:x yours (possessive pronoun for the second person plural)
tanəlga:bje to introduce
tarəbje to grow (plants)
tarkabje to beat, to hit
targəlčibje to fight
targon fat
tarja gajir cultivating field
tarja: crop
tarja: wər agriculture
tarja:č farmer, peasant, (common) people
tarja:čdul farm household
tasəg tiger (<Manchu *tasha*)

taše:r mistake, error
taširsəŋ selected
tatbje to pull
tata:s bowstring
tatbje to haul, to drag
tatməl drawer
tawbje to drive (cattle)
tawda:r fifth
tawgə mo:d stick
tawl hare, rabbit
ta:kən single-logged bridge
ta:lardəgə cute
ta:lčəgəljla:bje to kneel down
ta:ləbje to prefer
ta:ləgə bajt love (literally 'love affair')
ta:lərtəx to love
ta:nar you (second person plural pronoun)
ta:wdə:r sar May (literally 'the fifth month')
ta:w five
teǰe:ǰ absəŋ kəwk adopted son
teǰe:ǰ absəŋ ugun adopted son
teǰe:səŋ ača: foster father
teǰe:səŋ əwə: foster mother
tek he-goat, seed goat
təbšula:bje to slap
təbugə fruit
təd they
tədni: their
təgbubje to aim at, to watch for
təgiǰilbje to fall ill
təgši even, flat
təgši gaǰir plain (literally 'even place')
təgšil to harrow
təjbiše or, if it is not so
təjgdəčix only, mere

təjgəlǰig that way, in that manner
təǰiəːbje to tame, to domesticate, to foster, to bring up, to raise (domestic animals)
təjm biše if it is not so
təjmčir generally
təjmər however, such like, like that, yes (it is)
təjmər xiː Do like that!
təjmər agara if it is (already) so, and then, by itself, naturally, in the ordinary course of
təjmər agaraːčik təjmər even it is so, even if
təjmər agwo maybe, perhaps, probably
təjmər nogaːn it looks like that
təjmərčig for example
təjmərdul etcetera, and the rest of it
təjmərǰig considerably
tək point, dot
təməː camel
təməː bog elk, moose (literally 'camel deer' which is a direct translation of Chinese *tuólù* 駝鹿)
təməː borčo bean (literally 'camel bean')
təməː kəwk camel calf (literally 'camel male child')
təmpən basin (Might come from Chinese *tóngpén* 銅盆 'copper basin' which might be made of brass, that is *huángtóng* 黃銅 in Chinese)
təndər from there
təndəx in there
təndul those
təŋgər sky, heaven
təŋgər arbən weather
təŋgər čwaːga air force
təŋgər dwar world (<Loan translation of Chinese *tiānxià* 天下)
təŋgər gaǰir the Earth (literally heaven earth). See also **baŋgəl gaǰir**.
təŋgər gər paradise (Loan translation of Chinese *tiāntáng* 天堂)
təŋgər kuku sky blue

tər he, she, that
tər bəj that side
tər bəjd thither
tərdə because
tərəːr bišɛ beside that
tərəːr boldoŋ to be made up (with that)
tərəːr dəgdəː more than that, over that
tərəːr dwargdaː less than that, below that
tərəːr xwajnda after that, then
tərəg wagon, cart
tərgul way, road
tərgul čwaːga army
tərgul dwaːnd on the way, on the road
tərgulti gaǰir land
təri: his, her
təri: ǰalindin according to that
təri: ǰaːlan for that, therefore
təsbje to endure, to bear
təšərdbje to press
təw čaːǰ two days after tomorrow
təwgə morj mount, saddle horse
təwrəbje to brace
təːbje to put in
-ti with, together
tibkəs nail
tjeːs equivalent to Chinese monetary unit yuan
tukureː equivalent to Chinese monetary unit yuan (literally 'one circle' which looks like a direct translation of Chinese *yīyuán* 一圓)
tigkəbje to drive a nail
tjenčoŋ skylight, window in a roof (<Chinese *tiānhchuāng* 天窓)
tobgəbje to plant, to implant
tobsəm just, exactly
togaː iron pot

toga: to:lj vessels, utensils
toga: xon soot of (the cauldron)
togolor swan, crane
toj flag, (military) standard
tojo:rəlte cold
tojo:rəlte bolsəŋ to catch cold
tojwa: plane (<Chinese *tuībaò* 推刨)
toko saddle cushion
tokol calf
tolaǰi tractor (<Chinese *tuōlājī* 拖拉機)
tolbje to pour
tolgona lead (Pb), tin (Sn)
ton dwand center
tond fact
tond ərən immediately
tond uǰug truth
tondəkən xila:s straight line
tonjo: paint, lacquer
tont right, correct
toŋgorogo razor
toŋkočbje sleepy
tordbje surely, certainly
torgə silk
toro brand
tortbje to decide
tos oil, fat grease
tos dəŋǰən oil lamp
tosbje to wind
tosga:bje to hit
tošigla:bje to knock
tošikəna locust, grasshopper
tot morj herd of horses
to:nd correct, accurate, normal, common, ordinary
to:ndo:ko: straight
to:r trap, snare

tu:gwə gəntu the year after next
tujgə raw, uncooked
tujgən mjaga raw meat
tujmər fire, conflagration
tukure: round
tukure:kən full
tukure:kən saro:l full moon. See also **saro:l tukure:kən.**
tukure:ŋ kəčə:r circle
tula:gan clear weather (literally 'warm (and nice weather)')
tulbje to make a fire, to heat with a fire, to burn, to catch fire, to ignite
tulje:č firewood gather
tulje: fuel wood firewood
tulkbje to push
tulmə:tig earthenware
tum ten thousands
tumun ten thousands (as an attribute)
tumun tum hundred million
tuŋk drum
tuŋkə:bje to shear
turbje to be born, to bear, to be delivered of, to have, to breed
turbje to get lost
tursəŋ gajir native place (literally 'born place')
tursəŋ udur birthday
turtan su: colostrum
tutuge dove
tusurəbje to dish up, to pour
twa:laga pillar
twa:lbje to count
twa:lčəgəla:bje to kneel down
twa:rəl dust, mote
twalčig knee
twə number, figure, numeral

U

udur day, daytime
uǰubje to see
učəː poem
učukən small
učukən dəgiː chick
učukən olor boy
učukən onči small knife
učukər (little) child
udiš yesterday
udur day, daytime
nək udur one day (24 hours)
udur donə everyday
udur donə banjərd every morning
udur donə ərəjku every evening
udurəːr ordon forenoon, morning
udurəːr xwajn sajn Good afternoon!
udurəːr xwajnda afternoon
udurix budaː lunch
ugubje to die, to sacrifice
ugul winter
ugul ərən winter
ugul warsəŋ onset of winter (literally 'winter has entered') (<Chinese *lìdōng* 立冬. One of the 24 seasonal divisions which usually falls on December 6 or 7)
ugumə aunt (wife of father's younger brother)
ugun dəw younger sister (literally 'girl younger sibling')
ugun kəwk female child, daughter (literally 'girl child')
ugusəŋ dead
ugusəŋ jas dead body (literally 'dead bone')
ugusəŋ xuː the deceased, the dead
ujəl aga dəw male cousins
ujəl əkəši dəw female cousins
ujldəːč servant

ujldəːčibje to serve, to labor, to work
uǰəǰaːbje to be seen
uǰeːd uweː xuː monk. May be it is related to the Buteha **udʒaː nd uwəi** '毫無根據的, 胡鬧, 胡說八道' etc. in Enhebatu et al. (1984: 48). If so, it means one who talks groundless, nonsense, irrational words.
uǰug profit
uǰubje to come across (literally 'to see')
uǰuːlčibje to meet
uǰulčijaː Goodbye!
ukubje to give, to hand over, to send
ukučbje to supply, to present
ukugə ǰaka present (literally 'giving thing')
ukujrbje to take along, to bring along
ukuləg[1] funeral
ukuləg[2] gain
ukuləg[3] tax
ukulǰuweː lowly, humble
ukur cattle, ox
ukur adoːč cattle breeder
ukur mjaga beef
ul daːnə to have nothing to do with
ul dwarəlbje to opposite
ul ǰugə not right, incorrect
ul mədəm I don't know.
ulčig never
ulguːrə not at all
umpaːbje to swim, to bathe
una tool
unčən orphan
undus foundation, basis, stalk, stem, vine
undux egg
unən real, true
unənč sincere
unjeː cattle, cow, milking cow

unje: ba:s cattle dung
unje: sa:bje to milk a cow
uns hungry
unudur today
unug fox
ununte truthful, honest
unuŋgə sure, certain
urgə: gər Mongol tent, felt tent, canopy
urgə: gər nadməm wall of the Mongol tent
urgə:bje to celebrate, to congratulate
urgil story
urgo:lbje to congratulate
urkun (for soup, tea, etc.) thick, strong
urkun xola:ŋ light pink
uručulə:bje to carry, to convey, to bear
urugə black pepper
urumči koton gaǰir Urumqi city, City of Urumqi
usug words, language
usug xarəlgabje to have a conversation, to speak, to talk, to tell
usug xarilgabje answer
usugulči to speak, to talk, to tell
usuguljibje to speak, to talk, to tell
usula:bje to water
uta:či ancestor
utum round flat cake made of flour by baking or steaming
uwe: to do not have, to do not own

U :

u:nsbje hungry
u:nsdəŋ starved

W

wajlbje to sorrow, to be sad, to cry, to weep, to sob, to wail

wajr near
wajr agadəw relative (literally 'close brothers')
wajr ərənd recently
wajr əšigə relative (literally 'close uncle')
wajr sanaːte kind hearted
wajr tərgul shortcut
wajr xuː acquaintance
wajrin surrounding
wajrkan near
wajrlə relation
wajrtbje to near, to approach
waǰi foot print
waǰir to enter, to come in
waǰirgə əwd entrance
wakalbje to apology
wal foundation, basis
wangod west
waŋgaːbje to abort, to miscarry
warbje to rain, to snow
warbje to join, to enter
warəlčibje to infiltrate, to participate, to join
waričibje to enter, to go in
warkəl clothes
wa tile, roof tile (<Chinese *wǎ* 瓦)
waː[1] smell
waː[2] taste
waːnbje to fall, (for the sun) to set, to collapse, to fall down, to slip on
waːnsəŋ bore fruit
waːntbje to sleep, to have sexual intercourse
waːs socks (<Chinese *wàzi* 袜子)
waːte to have smell
woːgwə pumpkin (<Northern Chinese *wōguā* 倭瓜)
wəːlba air
wei Hello! (on the phone) (<Chinese *wèi* 喂)

X

xabše:bje to sue, to file a lawsuit
xače kind, sort
xačəŋ various
xad čolo: rock
xadəglago:r cave, storage place
xadəm ača: father-in-law
xadəm əwə: mother-in-law
xadgalǰibje to save
xadgənte to possess, having
xadgla:bje to keep, to put a thing in custody, to save, to store
xadla:bje to mix, to mingle, to blend
xadur sickle
xagarbje to crack, to shatter
xagolobje to slit, to split
xagor os rapids
xaǰibje to nibble. to gnaw
xaǰirbje to return, to come back
xajlbə raft
xajld elm
xajrbje to roast
xajrəlǰibje to grudge, to begrudge
xajrəx ribs
xalaga hand, palm
xalbəsəŋ gəǰig plait, hair in braids
xalbje[1] oar
xalbje[2] interference, to interfere, to attack, to assault
xallog hammer
xalo:ko warm
xalo:ŋ hot, fever, heat, temperature
xalo:n os hot water
xalo:ŋ su: hot milk
xamar nose
xamar nogu nostrils

xanda:jbe to cut hair
xanja:ka young
xanjəd phlegm, cough, coughing, to cough
xanjədəm I cough
xaŋka thirsty
xaŋkəbje to sink, to be submerged
xar black
xar dju:rt black birch
xar mjaga muscle
xara:bje to insult, to curse
xara:lbje to wish, to expect
xaral bitəg report
xarəp ten
xarbən ten (as an attribute)
xarbən dolo: seventeen
xarbən durup fourteen
xarbən gwarəb thirteen
xarbən is nineteen
xarbən ǰurgo: sixteen
xarbən najm eighteen
xarbən nək eleven
xarbən nəkdə:r sar November (literally 'the eleventh month')
xarbən ta:w fifteen
xarbən ta:wən the fifteenth day of the month
xarbən tum hundred thousand
xarbən tumun tum billion
xarbən xojor twelve
xarbən xojordə:r sar December (literally 'the twelfth month')
xarəbda:r sar October (literally 'the tenth month')
xardardbje to get sooty, to get tanned
xardəŋ os bank (for water) (literally 'water closed by bank')
xarəb nəkdə:r eleventh
xarəŋguj kuku dark blue
xargal animal dung
xargolč paste

xarjəljibje to grant, to bestow
xariǰ xwalgaːbje to dry over (the fire)
xarilgabje to answer, to give back, to return, to exchange
xarjbje to return, to go back
xarməbje shooting, firing, to shoot, to fire
xarmiši tatbje arrow shooting, to shoot an arrow
xaroŋgo dark
xaroŋgo bolbje to grow dark
xaši təjmər durte as if
xasoːbje to investigate, examine, to demand, to pray, to wish, to ask, to question
xasoːlčibje to consult, to confer, to counsel
xatalčilgabje to be mixed, to be mingled
xatlaːbje to be mixed, to be mingled
xawbje to steam
xawjarən all, all together
xawr file, rasp
xawr ərən spring
xawr warsəŋ onset of spring (literally 'spring has entered') (<Chinese *lìchūn* 立春. One of the 24 seasonal divisions which usually falls on February 3 or 4)
xaːbje to shield, to cover
xaːlbje to be injured
xaːljəb fish net
xaːn where
xaːn ajmən Korean in China (**xaːn** is probably derived from Chinese *hán* 韓 in *hánguó* 韓國)
xaːn bəjd in which side
xaːn gurun Korea (Republic of Korea) (<Chinese 韓 in *hánguó* 韓國+**gurun** 'country')
xaːndə rice, rice plant. See also **kaːndə**.
xaːndə budaː cooked rice. See also **kaːndə budaː**.
xaːnəgol anywhere
xaːrjbje to bathe in the sun
xaːt bundle, bunch

xəb unity, solidarity
xəbbər coarse
xəbərinŋk dense
xəbšəlčibje to discuss, to negotiate
xəbšjəːbje to blow
xəčisəŋ emaciated, lean
xəd how many
xədən how many (as an attribute)
xədən čag boldaŋ What time is it?
xəddəːr which (in a series), in which number
xədəlbje to liberate
xədiː how many
xəǰig broom
xəjlbje to marry (to take a husband)
xəjn wind
xəjn tosbje to wind
xəl tongue
xəlbje to reply, to answer, to speak, to talk, to tell, to inform
xələ bitter
xələg purple (literally 'liver color')
xələg liver
xələn ǰus gray (literally 'tongue color')
xəniːx whose
xərəː how
xərəldbje to criticize
xərig thumb
xərǰig at last, finally
xəsbje to sweep
xəsirgu opposition
xəsirgu ǰuːgu direct opposition
xəwdbje to employ, to help, to cooperate
xəwər badger
xəwr lair, den, nest
xəːbje to pledge, to give one's word
xəːbšeː yawning

xəːbšeːǰbje to yawn
xəːr steppe, wilderness. See also **kəːr.**
xəːr tal steppe, wilderness. See also **kəːr tal.**
xičibje to feel shame, to be ashamed of
xilaː dish
xilaːk squint-eyed
xilaːs thread
ximdus granule
xiŋgəːbje to chafe, to rub
xiːbje to do, to make, to work
xiːǰ gargaːbje to produce
xiːŋgiːbje to grind
xjot narrow, cramped
xjot baka stream
xobjəlčibje to leave
xod star
xodaː price, value
xodaːte noble (literally 'expensive'. There is a chance that our consultant thought we were asking a word for 'expensive' because the Chinese word in questionnaire is 高貴)
xodaːin tawdbje to compensate
xodos urinary bladder
xojaːbje to tie, to bind
xojəǰital separately
xojəbje separated
xojnəx sar next month
xojoǰ ərkibje to separate
xojolčibje to distinguish, to tell
xojor two
xojor kəč two directions, two sides
xojor ǰaw two hundreds
xojor madən two times
xojor mjaːŋga two thousands
xojor xuː two persons
xojordaːr the second

xojorda:r dabkər gər second floor
xojorda:r sar February (literally 'the second month')
xojorə:r gwarbəd from two to three
xojo:bje to distribute, to divide, to split
xojo:ljbje to halve
xojor foundation, basis
xola:ŋ red
xola:ŋ borčo: read bean (literally 'red bean' which might be a direct translation of Chinese *hóngdòu* 紅豆.)
xolčir in distance
xolo:bje[1] to heat
xolo:bje[2] to steal
xoloǰ uǰubje to steal a glance, to peep through
xolorda:n poplar
xon smoke
xonj sheep
xonj ado:lbje to breed sheep
xonji: ars duruk sheepskin belt
xonji mjaga mutton
xonji: su: sheep's milk
xonji: xus wool
xoŋgor Evenki people
xor top, summit, peak
xorč xa:rdbje to turn
xorča:bje[1] to cultivate, to plow, to till,
xorča:bje[2] to interpret, to translate
xorča:bje[3] to turn over, to reverse
xorča:l interpretation, translation
xorjda:r twentieth
xordoŋ quickly, fast, speed
xore: herd, pen for domestic animal
xorəl chimney, stove pipe
xorən nə:bje to open the meeting
xorgobje[1] to conceal, to hide
xorgobje[2] to escape, to evade

xorilčibje to gather, to be collected, to be gathered
xorin twenty (as an attribute)
xorin nək twenty one
xorj twenty
xorje:bje to collect, to sum up, to add up, to gather
xorjo:r xulu: over twenty
xorogdəgi: woodpecker
xorogdəl insect
xorolči social intercourse, socializing, banquet, (military) gathering
xoro:[1] fair, temple fair
xoro:[2] finger
xorux worm
xošgjə bəj back, background, backside
xotor happy, fortune, luck
xotor uwe: unhappy, misfortune, unlucky
xo: dwand center
xo: dwandi: xor center
xo: dwandəx distance
xo:l[1] backbone, spine
xo:l[2] far
xo:l turgul long way, distant way
xo:n year
xo:n toloŋ every year
xo:ŋbus wind (in the bowels), fart
xo:ŋgobje to break wind, to fart
xo:səŋ empty
xubdəl chaff, bran
xudul movement
xudul kuč energy, vitality, strength
xudulbje to move
xudulgə:bje to shake, to move (something)
xuja:bje to mix, to mingle, to blend
xujə:rǰbje to suspect, to doubt, to distrust
xujtəŋ cold. See also /kujtəŋ/

xukursəŋ gaǰir oasis
xulčegərə a short while
xulordbje to swell
xult sweat
xult garbje to sweat
xulu: surplus, remainder
xund weight
xundi:ŋ xəmǰə:lbje to weigh
xundul width, horizontal
xundul jawbje to cross, to traverse
xundur high, tall, hight
xundur xoro: middle finger
xunsu ash
xunt heavy
xuŋgur (slender) tube, (slender) pipe
xuŋgwə:kən light
xuŋk towel
xuŋku hood
xur seed
xurgən son-in-law
xus hair
xus magal fur hat
xusti ars warkəl fur (clothing)
xusbje (for a woman) to marry again, to gain sudden wealth
xu: person, human being. See also **ku:**.
xu:bje to rot, to decay
xu:nəbje to smell, to inhale
xu:ŋkurbje to roll
xu:rx bridge
xu:suŋ mo:d dead tree
xu:ti xu: anyone
xwadəl false
xwajn ača: stepfather (literally 'later father')
xwajn bəj back, rear
xwajn bəjd in rear side

xwajn bəjin its back
xwajn əǰin empress
xwajnda: məjtbje to withdraw, retreat
xwajnda: udur some other day (literally 'later day')
xwajnda: backward
xwajnəx əwə: step mother (literally 'mother who belongs to the later')
xwal kang, heatable bed, under floor heating
xwaləgu sneak, filcher
xwalje:səŋ intimate
xwaltərbje to bloom
xwarləgə ərən rainy season
xwa:bje to dry, to get dry
xwa:l flood
xwa:lgabje: to dry, to make dry
xwa:r rain
xwa:səŋ dry
xwa:səŋ boldəŋ mjaga dried meat after cooked
xwasəŋ əws fodder, forage
xwa:səŋ gaǰir dry land
xwa:səŋ mjaga dried meat
xwə: coal
xwə:rcəlbje to pity, to take pity on
xwə:s foam, bubble, pus
xwə:səlbje to form pus

Y :

y:t iron (<Chinese *yùndou* 熨頭)
y:tlə- to do ironing

Z

za:ǰ magazine (<Chinese *zázhì* 雜誌)
zoŋtoŋ president of a nation (<Chinese *zǒngtǒng* 總統)

Unanswered words

I. Do not know: Consultant believed that it was in his mother tongue but he happened not to know it.

Meaning	Chinese
asp	蝮蛇
bay, gulf	灣
blunt, dull	鈍
buckwheat	蕎麥
bud, sprout	芽
cartridge clip, charger	彈夾[4]
centipede	蜈蚣
cocoon	繭兒
crab	螃蟹
crayfish	刺蛄
to go crazy	癲狂
cricket	蟋蟀
cruel, harsh, severe	苛酷
earthworm	蚯蚓
enemy	敵人
to be fed up	厭倦
fin	鰭
flea	跳蚤
gills	魚鰓
gum, teeth ridge	牙齦
increasingly	漸漸
influence	影響
to invade	侵略
to hesitate	躊躇

4) Korean entry 탄약통 (which is 子彈盒 in Chinese) in our questionnaire must be corrected as 삽탄기 or 탄약 장전기. Otherwise Chinese entry 彈夾 in our questionnaire must be corrected as 子彈盒.

lenok (Brachymystax lenok lenok)	細鱗魚
maggot	蛆虫
namely	卽如
oat	燕麥
plant	植物
shell fish	貝
spy	間諜
to pass through	走過/通過
punishment	罰
river bend	河灣
roe deer	獐子
roe deer meat	獐子肉
rubella	風疹塊
to be satiated	膩
satirize	諷刺
scales	魚鱗
sharp	銳
shrimp	蝦
silkworm	蠶
trunk, bulk of the body	軀幹
umbrella	雨傘
whirlpool	旋渦

II. Does not exist: Consultant believed that the native form did not exist in his mother tongue.

Meaning	Chinese
altar	祭壇
angler fish	老頭魚
bacillus	細菌
bamboo	竹子
billboard, sign	牌子
carp	鯉魚
catfish	鮡魚
cedar	杉樹

clan	氏族
contents	内容
crucian carp	鯽魚
cuckoo	杜鵑
to curse	詛呪
to decorate	裝飾
decoration	裝飾
design	設計
to disinfect, to sterilize	消毒
divination, fortunetelling	占
element	要素
essence	本質
to explode	爆炸
factory	工場
family name	姓
fast, abstinence	斷食
fence	柵子
fitch (Mustella putorius)	艾虎
grass hopper	蝈蝈
island	島
ivory	象牙
last night	昨天夜裡/昨晚
law	法律
leopard	豹子
lion's mane mushroom	猴頭蘑 (Hericium erinceum)
lynx	猞猁
machine gun	機關銃
maxim, adage	格言
metal bucket	白皮罐
Miss	小姐
mold	霉菌
to mobilize	動員
music	音樂
nature	性質

nerve	神經
night attack	夜襲
oak tree	柞樹
to occur, happen	發生
pen	筆
penis	陰莖
persimmon	柹子
pleat (of clothes)	摺
to protest	抗議
politics	政治
princess	公主
province	省
reindeer	馴鹿
revolution	革命
right	權利
to rule	支配
sable	貉
salmon (Hucho taimen)	哲羅魚
to save	攢
scope, range	範圍
sleigh	雪橇[5]
squirrel	松鼠
stage	舞臺
status, capacity, identity	身分
strawberry	草莓
to success	成功
swaddling clothes	襁褓[6]
sweet potatoes	甘藷/地瓜
system	系統
testicles	睾丸
this evening	今天晚上

5) 雪撬 in the questionnaire must be corrected as above.

6) At first, consultant replied as "pur olburti bolbje" which roughly means 'it has turned out great result', then he denied his first answer.

this morning	今天早上
tonight	今夜
torch	火矩
trigger	扳機
pale lavender pink	藕荷色[7]
vulva	陰門
to wander	彷徨
whale	鯨魚
wilderness	曠野
a kind of wild berry	稠李子
a kind of wild fruit	山丁子

III. Forgot: Consultant believed that there was a native form but he simply forgot it.

Meaning	Chinese
active	積極
to ask, offer, recommend	勸
avalanche, snowslide	雪崩
to be contagious, to be infectious	傳染
dragonfly	蜻蜓
elephant	大象
frost	霜
hedgehog	刺猬
interest	利息
lover	戀人
to neglect	懶怠
rainbow	彩虹
satisfactory, smooth	圓滿[8]
scabies	癬
shallow	淺
shameful	慙愧/羞愧

7) Korean entry in questionnaire was 보라, which means 'violet'.

8) Our original intention was to ask the Dagur word for Chinese 緩慢 'slow- (moving), gentle'.

to tickle	胳肢
tumour	瘤子
whistle	口哨兒
wound, injury	負傷
wrinkle	皺紋

IV. Did not understand: We failed to make our consultant understand the question or the intention of the question

Meaning	Chinese
cooking fireplace	灶台
to feel, realize	覺得
instrumental marker	拿/用/由[9]
passive marker	被[10]

V. No explanation: Consultant did not answer for the words below without giving any explanation.

Meaning	Chinese
to attempt	嘗試
to peel off	揭下
to spy on	窺視

9) We failed to let our consultant understand that we wanted to know the instrumental case marking strategy.

10) We failed to let our consultant understand that we wanted to know the passive voice marking strategy. He answered in active voice at every Chinese sentence we asked in passive voice.

Appendix 2

Basic Conversational Expressions

<§1. First meeting>

1. How do you do?
   sajn ši: jə
2. I am very glad to meet you.
   (1) šami: tanəgəda: dəmbəl bajsča:w
   (2) šaməti olulčgəda: dəmbəl bajsča:w
3. How do you do? I am fine.
   sajn ši: jə sajn
4. I am very glad to meet you.
   (1) šaməti olučgəda: dəmbəl bajsča:w
   (2) bi: bas dəmbəl bajsča:w šami: uǰugədə: 'I am also very glad to meet you.'
5. My name is Ja:z.
   min nərəm ǰa:z
6. What is your name?
   (1) ši: nəršin anja
   (2) šin nəršin anja
7. My name is Sajr.
   min nərəm sajr
8. Where is your village?
   šin ajl šin xa:n bje

9. My village is in Tarbagatai.
   mini ajləm tarbagatajd bje
10. I am coming here first time.
    bi: nəktə:r madən mə:nd irǰ a:w
11. Where is your home?
    šin gər šin xa:n bje
12. I am living in Tacheng now.
    bi: dajnšaŋ ta:čəŋd a:ǰw
13. What kind of work are you doing?
    ši: dajšaŋ jamər aləb xa:ǰ bje ši jə
14. I am a teacher.
    bi: səbu sawǰ a:w
15. What kind of work are you doing?
    ši: jamər aləb xa:ǰ bje ši: jə:
16. I am breeding horse.
    bi: morj təǰe:ǰ a:w
17. How many people are there in your house?
    šin gərtšin xədən aŋgəl bje
18. There are my father and mother. There is a wife. Then there are daughters and sons.
    ača: əwə:n bje nugurən bje təgəǰ ugur kəwkərən bje
19. What for did you come here?
    ši: ənd jo: bajt irsəŋ ši: jə
20. I came here to see my elder brother and younger siblings.
    bi: ənd aka: dəwnərə: uǰugəni irsəŋbi
21. Please have fun with your family.
    ši: gəri: xu:tijə: bajsəlgə andaǰ bje ši: jə

<§2. Visiting>

22. How do you do?
    ši: sajn jawsəŋ ši: jə
23. I am fine. How do you do?
    bi: sajn jawsəŋ

24. Is your husband at home?
    šin nuguršin gərtəː bje ja
25. He went out.
    bəːd garčisəŋ
26. When will he come back?
    xəǰəː xaǰirbje
27. He is coming soon.
    (1) dajnšaŋ irbje
    (2) dajnšaŋ xaǰirbje
28. Is there any business?
    bajtšin bje jə
29. I have a business. I am going to ask one matter from your husband.
    (1) bajtəm bje šiniː nugurəːršin nək bajt xasoːb
    (2) bajtəm bje šiniː nugurəːršin nək bajt xasoːǰ aːw
30. Please come in!
    waǰirkəna
31. Oh, yes. Watch your dog please!
    a bolloː noxoː uǰutə
32. Take off your clothes!
    warkəl ajlakəna
33. Please take a sit!
    sawkəna
34. Would you like to smoking?
    daŋgə oːkəna
35. I am not smoking.
    (1) biː daŋgə lu oː
    (2) biː daŋgə lu oːm
36. Did you have your meal?
    budaː idsəŋ šiː jə
37. I had my meal.
    budaː idsəŋ
38. Where did you come from?
    šiː xaːnaːr irsəŋ šiː jə

39. I came out from Beijing and dropped by at Urumqi on the way to here.
bi: bəːǰiŋəːr garč urumuči duləǰ irsəŋb
40. Where are you going?
xaːn ičibje ši: jə
41. I am going to Altai.
altajd ičib
42. How many people are there in your family?
gərtšin xədən aŋgəl bje
43. How many grown-ups?
xədən ig xu: bje
44. There two men.
xojor ərgun xu: bje
45. There is one woman.
nək əmgun xu: bje
46. There are three children.
gwarbən učikər bje
47. How old is your big children?
ig kəwkšin xədi: boldaŋ
48. He became eight years old.
najmti boldaŋ
49. Did your husband come back?
ərgunšin xaǰirsəŋ ja
50. He has not come back.
xaǰirsəŋ uwe:
51. Then who came?
təgər anja irsəŋ
52. Nobody has come.
anja čig irsəŋ uwe:
53. Now your husband has come back![1)]
ədəː ərgunšin xaǰirsəŋ
54. Is everybody fine?

1) Originally, we asked our consultant how would he say "現在丈夫回來了!" in Dagur, expecting he would understand the Chinese expression as 'My husband has come back!'.

ta xawjarən sajn a:ǰbta ja

55. Fine.
sajn

56. Is there any special business?
bišin bajtšin uwe: a:gə

57. Nothing special.
bišin bajt uwe:

58. Is your body fine?
ši: bəjšin sajn ja

59. As usual.
ordoni:x noga:n

60. Have you been to Altai?
ši: altajd ičiǰ a:ǰ ši: jə

61. I have been there three times.
gwarbən madən ičisəŋbi

62. How many houses are there in your village?[2)]
ajltan xədən bojgən bje

63. There are more than ten thousand households.
tumun xulu: bojgən bje

64. How big is your Ashil place?
ašil gaǰirtan jo:kə ig

65. It is one thousand square kilometers.
mja:ŋga piŋfaŋ guŋli

66. In which year, Ashil of yours was established?
ašiltan ali xo:n bajdsəŋ

67. It was established in 1963.
nək mja:ŋga isən ǰaw ǰaran gwarəbda:r xo:n bajdsəŋ

68. Where is your government center?
tan ǰəŋfutan xa:n gol a:ǰbje

69. It is in Ashil.
ašild a:ǰbje

---

2) Originally, we asked our consultant how would he say "有幾戶人家?" in Dagur, expecting he would surely understand that we were talking about the households of Altai because we had just finished sentences 60 and 61.

70. How many Dagur people are there in your village?
    (1) tan ajltan jokəd dagor xu: bje
    (2) tan ajltan jokəd dagor aŋgəl bje
71. About one thousand.
    mja:ŋga kurugə xu: bje
72. Has the meal cooked?
    buda: bolgasəŋ ši: jə
73. Bring here please!
    ənd ačirkəna
74. Have meal!
    buda idkəna
75. Thank you!
    banix
76. Water has boiled.
    os bačildaŋ
77. Have tea please!
    čaj o:kəna
78. Give me another cup of tea please!
    naməd nək ča:ǰok čaj ǰuru ukukəna
79. I am leaving now.
    (1) bi: jada jawgu
    (2) bi: jada jawgə bje
80. When are you coming then?
    ədə: xəǰe: irbši: jə
81. I will come tomorrow.
    bənj iru
82. I have had you get too much trouble.
    dəmbəl ǰogosəŋbi
83. Thank you!
    banix
84. See you!
    uǰulčija

<§3. Hunting>

85. Let us go hunting!
    bad gurəːs awlačija
86. Let us go!
    jawjakəna
87. Let us go on a horseback!
    bad morjd onǰ ičija
88. Prepare the horses!
    morjoː bəlkəna
89. I can not go today.
    unudur ičiǰ ul šadgə bolunda
90. Why can you not go?
    jugoː ul iči šadənda
91. Because I have no horse and I can not go.
    morj uweː boldaŋdin ul ičigə boldənda
92. Let us go on my horse.
    mini morjdum oːnǰi ičitala
93. Are you ready?
    bələn boldəŋ šiː jə
94. Where is good place to go hunting?
    gurəːs awlačirənda xaːn ičirəndan bolloː
95. Where is good place to go hunting?
    xaːn ičiǰu gurəːs awlagarəndan bolloː
96. I know.
    biː mədəm
97. Follow me!
    naməjiː dagəǰ jawaː
98. Are there wild pigs?
    tənd kəːriː gax bje jə
99. A lot.
    bəraːn
100. Is there a tiger?

tasəg bje jə

101. There is no tiger now.
dajnšaŋ uweː boldaŋ

102. Beside that what kind of animals are there?
tərəːr bišin jamər gurəːs bje ja

103. There are wild pigs, roe deers, wolves, bears, and other animals.
xəriː gax bje ǰuːr bje guskoː bje bəːbug bje tərəːr bišin-in bas bje

104. Let us go faster!
(1) xordok
(2) xordoŋ kali jawa

105. Wait a moment!
bajǰa

106. That is a roe deer.
təršin ǰuːr

107. I will go this way.
biː əndəːr jawaː

108. You wait at the edge of that stream.
šiː tər doːjiː kəčdin kulčeːǰa

109. I see.
məddəŋbi (or maybe məddəŋbi)

110. Oh, I hit!
aː taljərdəŋ

111. What did you hit?
joː taljərdəŋ

112. Oh, it's a roe deer!
(1) oi ǰuːr
(2) ǰuːrə 'A roe deer!'

113. Here are the bear's footprints.
(1) ənd bəːbugiː waǰin bje
(2) ənd bas bəːbugiː waǰin bje 'Here are also the bear's footprints.'

114. These two are yesterday's footprints.
ən xojorin udišəːr dotsəŋ waǰi kə

115. Where did the bear go?
bəːbug xajdaː jawsəŋ xaːn ičisəŋ
116. Oh, it seems it went far.
(1) aj xoːl jawaː taldagaː
(2) xoːl jawa taldagaː
117. There are wolves in the peak of that mountain.
tər awliː xordin guskoː bje
118. Let us tie the horses and go by walk!
morj xujaǰ jawga ičija
119. I will go alone.
biː gaška ičija
120. Watch out!
kičijəǰ jawaj
121. There are pheasants.
taliː kakra bje məkə
122. I will shoot.
biː talubi (or bi talubje)
123. Let us go and see!
(1) ičiǰ uǰuǰa
(2) ičiǰ uǰučə
124. Did it hit the target?
(1) taljərdəŋ jə
(2) tosdəŋ ja
125. I hit!
tossəŋ
126. Where did you aim?
xaːndin tosdəŋ məkə
127. I shot at the head.
əkdin tosdəŋ
128. I will shoot next time.
(1) dagje madən biː irǰ taljəgwaj
(2) dagje madən biː irǰ taluwa
129. It became dark. Let us sleep at this very mountain.
xarəŋgu boldəŋ mən awld wantalja

<§4. Taking a rest>

130. I am tired.
bi: čaŋgəlǰ a:bje
131. Where do we rest?
xa:n kərdiǰ wantu:da
132. Let us rest right here!
mə:nd amura taljad
133. Erect this tent!
ən urgə gərt
134. Take off the saddle!
əmələ: bo:lgaga tal
135. Where is the water?
xa:n os bje
136. Its over there.
tər bəjd bje
137. Let the horses get watered.
morj oslaja
138. Put the horses in the fetters!
morj xojaga: tal
139. Watch the horses!
morj uǰawa
140. Bring the grasses!
əws awčja
141. Make a fire please!
gali: šitajata
142. Light the lamp please!
dənǰən šitajata
143. I am sleepy.
bi: toŋkəǰəǰ a:w
144. I am going to sleep now.
bi: ədə: wantbje
145. You go to sleep first!
ši: əməl wantǰila

146. Fine.
bollo:
147. You sleep here!
ši: ənd wantə

<§5. Rising in the morning and Departure>

148. Day has broken!
gəjsəŋ
149. Get up!
bos
150. Did you wake up already?
bossən ši ja
151. Did you sleep well last night?
sunəkə sajn wantsəŋ ši jə
152. I slept well.
sajn wantsəŋbi
153. Is there water in the washbasin?
pənsəd os bje ja
154. Bring the soap!
i:z awǰ waǰirə
155. Let us wash our faces!
njadamə: oga:dkəna
156. Rinse mouth!
(1) xundulə: bolgə
(2) ama: bolgə
157. Did your horse eat grass?
morjšin əws iddəŋ ja
158. Oh, ate a lot.
a: bəra:n bəra:n iddəŋ
159. Bring the horse!
morj kutuləǰ ačirkəna
160. Let us go driving the horse!
morj kutuləǰ jawjat

161. Let us go fast!
xordoŋ jawja
162. Where does this road go?
ən xa:n ičigə tərgul jə
163. This is the road to Ashil.
ənšin ašild ičigə tərgul
164. Is there a road over there?
tər bəjd tərgul bje ja
165. That is the muddy place.
təršin šawrti gaǰir
166. It is hard to go.
jawgəd kəču:
167. Is this road good to go?
ən tərgul jawgəd sajn ja
168. This is a shortcut.
ənšin wajr tərgul
169. What is the name of the mountain?
tər awli: nərən jo:
170. That is Tianshan mountain.
(1) təršin tie:nšan awl
(2) təršin altaj awlin 'That is Altai mountain.'

<§6. Weather>

171. How is the weather today?
əndur təŋgər xərə:
172. It is fine day today.
əndur gjaloŋk məkə
173. How is it outside?
bə:d xər a:ǰbje (or may be bə:d xər a:ǰ jə)
174. There are clouds.
əwlən bje
175. Clouds are dispelled.
əwlən bətərsəŋ

176. Weather has become clear.
təŋgər dwa:ldaŋ
177. It rained all night long.
sunəkə xwar warsəŋ
178. Rain stopped.
xwar xə:səŋ
179. Let us go fast!
xordkali jawkəna
180. It snowed.
čas warsəŋ
181. Weather is cold.
kujtəŋ bolǰ bje kə
182. I am getting chilled.
bi: da:rǰ a:bje
183. From where is this wind blowing?
(1) ən xəjn xa:na:r xəjsǰ bje
(2) ən jamər xəjnə:r 'What kind of wind is this?'
184. This is a mountain wind.
ənšin awli: xəjnin

<§7. Meal>

185. Did you eat your meal?
buda: idsəŋ ši jə
186. I have not eaten yet.
iddəŋ uwe:
187. I am starving very much.
(1) bi: kənəm dəmbəl unsǰ bje
(2) mini kənəm dəmbəl unsǰ bje
188. Let us cook!
buda:g xi:ja
189. Let us start a fire here.
ənd gal čigija
190. Let us cook rice in the kettle.

toga:d buda:g xi:ja

191. What kind of meal do you eat everyday?
udur dulə jamər buda: idǰ bje ši: jə

192. Rice.
(1) ka:ndə buda:
(2) mjenbo idǰ a:wa: '(I am) eating bread.'

193. Please sit down!
sawkəna

194. Ok. Let us sit around together.
bollo: nəkən sawja:dkəna

195. What kind of drink do you have?
jamər arig bje

196. There is a vodka.
arǰ arig bje

197. How many are there?
jo:kə bje

198. There are two bottles.
xojor loŋk bje

199. Have some more.
wə:d oǰok o:kəna

200. I got drunk.
bi: sortsəŋbi

201. I won't drink.
bi: ul o:na

202. I am full.
bi: čaddəŋb

<§8. Division of the games>

203. Hunters came back.
(1) awlačindul xaǰirsəŋ
(2) gurə:s awlačindul xaǰirsəŋ

204. What kind of games did you bring?
jamər gurə:s ačirsəŋta

205. They brought roe deer and deer.
ǰu:rti bog ačirǰsəŋ
206. Did you divide the meat?
mjagaji:n xojosəŋta ja
207. No. We have not divided yet.
uwe: xojoǰ uga:
208. Which part do you want?
ši: jonin awbši jə
209. Give me some venison.
(1) bogi: mjaga:r očok ukə
(2) bogi: mjaga:r namad bas očok ukə 'Give me also some venison.'
210. Which part of the meat would you like to have?
ši: xa:nəxin mjagin awbši jə
211. Give me front legs!
əməl kulə:ri: naməd ukə
212. Is there any meat left?
ədə: xulduŋ mjagin bje ja
213. No, there is no meat left.
uwej boldaŋ
214. Please roast meat well and give it to me!
naməd bogi: mjagin sajkan bolgaǰ ukə

<§9. Shopping>

215. Come in!
waǰira
216. What do you want? (literally 'What kind of thing are you taking?')
ši: jamər ǰaka awbješi ja
217. I will buy an over coat and a hat.
bi: də:rx warkəlti magal awbje
218. You, please bring me that black fur hat!
ši: tər xar xusti magali: naməd ačirkəna

219. Here you are!
ma
220. You, please try on it!
(1) ši: əməsuǰ uǰukəna
(2) əməsuǰ uǰukəna 'Please try on it!'
221. It is a little bit small.
učukənčirə boldaŋ
222. Do you not have a little bit bigger one?
igčirən uwe: ja
223. How is this?
(1) ənən xəra:
(2) ənən bolja 'It is O.K.?'
224. It is well fitting.
ən je:kəŋ məkə gajsa
225. Then what kind of over coat do you have?
də:rx warkəl bišiŋ jamər xačin imbje ja
226. Try on this red one!
ən xola:ŋ ǰustin əmusuǰ uǰukəna
227. I do not like this color.
ən ǰusin bi: ul dwarləmbje
228. Please bring that green one. I will see it.
tər šilan ǰustin ačirkəna bi: uǰutəgəmbje
229. Here it is.
ma aw
230. How is it?
xərə: bolbje ja
231. It fits me. Very well.
ədə: ǰugusəŋ madən ǰugusəŋ
232. I like it very much.
bi: dəmbəl do:rəlǰ a:w
233. How much is it?
jo:kə xoda:te
234. It is three thousands eight hundreds ninety yuan.
gwarbən mja:ŋga najm ǰaw irən tje:s
235. It is expensive.

katoːmčiləkə

236. Do you not have cheaper one?
kantkanin uweː jə

237. How about this brown clothes?
ən xələg ǰuste warkəl xərəː

238. This clothes is cheaper than that clothes.
ən warkəl tər warkəlaːr kantkan

239. Oh, it is fine.
aː bolloː

240. I will take this black fur hat and this brown clothes.
(1) biː ən xar xusti magal ən xələg ǰusti warkəliː awbje
(2) mən xar xusti magal tər xələg ǰusti warkəliː awbje
'I will take this very black fur hat and that brown clothes.'

241. How much is it altogether?
(1) xawjarən joːkə tjeːs jə
(2) joːkə xodaː 'How much?'

242. The hat is six hundred fifty eight yuan and the over coat is three thousand four hundred seventy one yuan.
magal ǰurgoːn ǰaw tajn najm ties bəːdəx warkəl gwarbən mjaːŋga durbən ǰaw dalan nək tjeːs

243. All together, four hundred eighty yuan.
gubiːn korkəsəŋdaː durbən ǰaw najn tjeːs

244. Here, take the money!
ma ǰigajiː awkəna

245. Thank you!
(1) banixgəlǰ aːw
(2) banixəlǰ aːw

246. Come back again!
dagje bas irǰulagane

<§10. Apology>

247. I am late.

bi: gwajtəsəŋbi

248. Sorry for that!
aǰigəldəg uwe:

249. You did not start the meeting because of me.
bi: xu:dul xoroljiǰ walǰ a:ǰ a:w

250. It does not matter.
jo:l aǰira

<§11. Medical treatment>

251. How are you doctor?
(1) dajf sajnši jə
(2) dajf ši: sajnši jə

252. What is wrong with you? (literally 'What happened to you?')
(1) šaməd jo: boldaŋ
(2) šaməd jo: xi:səŋ

253. I feel uncomfortable. (literally 'My body is not good.')
bəjəm amtəbə bolǰ a:bje

254. Where is uncomfortable?
xa:ndəxšin ul bolǰ bje ja

255. I have a headache. (literally 'My head is aching.')
əkəm əwdəǰ bje

256. I feel like I caught a cold.
bi: tojo:rəlte boldəŋ noga:n durte jawa:

257. I am sweating (literally 'Sweat is coming out.')
kuld garǰ a:bje

258. I have a stomachache (literally 'My stomach is aching.')
kə:num əwdəǰ bje

259. I have a diarrhea.
kə:num tawǰ bje

260. When did it start?
xəǰə:r əkəldəŋ

261. Three days ago. (literally 'It became three days.')

gwarbən kono boldaŋ

262. Please take off your over coat! (literally 'Please take off your outer garment!'
bə:dəx warkəl ajlakəna

263. Take off your shirt too!
čanč bas ajlaga tal

264. Raise your arms please!
gara: ərgəkəna

265. Stretch your arms!
gara: garga

266. Is here of yours aching?
əndəxšin əwda: ja

267. It is not aching.
ul əwda:

268. How is your urine?
sə:sšin xərə:

269. Is it much or little?
(1) bəra:n ja očok jo
(2) sə:sšin bəra:n ja očok jo

270. How is your appetite?
buda: idəgəšin xərə:

271. I have no appetite.
idəgə dwarəm ul kurə:

272. Put on your clothes please!
warkəl əmusǰ a:kəna

273. Let me feel your pulse.
(1) šin swadəlišin bariǰ uǰuja
(2) swadəlišin bariǰ uǰuja

274. What disease is this? (literally 'What disease do I have?')
jamər əwrte

275. It's a cold.
tojo:rəlte

276. There is nothing to worry. (literally 'There is nothing to worry about this.')
ənd ajəgə jo: č uwe:

277. Take this medicine three times a day.
ən əmi: nək udurdin gwarbən madən idə
278. I see.
məddəŋbi
279. Goodbye! (literally 'Be well!')
sajn a:gane

<§12. Season>

280. The wind has become cool.
(1) kujtəŋ sugusəŋ irsəŋ 'The cold wind has come.'
(2) xəjn kujtəŋ bolǰ bje 'The wind is becoming cold.'
(3) kujtəŋ xəjn xəjsǰbje 'The cold wind is blowing.'
281. It was so hot and we were sweating just several days ago.
xədən kono əməldin xalo:rčiǰ kuld garsəŋbi
282. How fast the time flies!
ərən jamər xordoŋ nursč bje
283. Since the Autumnal Equinox Day has passed, the day is becoming shorter.
(1) čəwfuŋ nurssŋ xojna:r udur čakto: bolǰ a:gə ja
(2) čəwfuŋ nurssəŋ xojna:rin udur čakto: bolǰ a:gə ja
284. I wish this winter is not so cold as the last winter.
(1) ən ugul nidanux noga:n kujtəŋ bolarin sajn bologča:-səŋ
(2) ən xo:n ugul nidan noga:n kujtəŋ bolarin sajn bologča:səŋ
285. It would be fine if it snows not that much.
(a) čas təjmər bəra:n bo:arenarin sajn
(b) čas təjmər bəra:n bo:ararin sajn
286. All of us should prepare well for the winter.
ugulə: uguldəgədə: bələn bəlkǰibdaja
287. We should look here and there around the house.
gərə: sajkan ǰugəǰ uǰuddəŋ

288. It is easy to catch a cold in these cold weather.
əjmər kujtəŋ ərənd toj:orəlte bolo: talaxda:
289. Take good care of yourself!
bəjə: sajn bologədin kičijətə

<§13. Happy event>

290. What kind of delightful thing do you have?
jamər bajsəgə bajtšin bje ja
291. I heard that your younger sibling is coming back from abroad.
(1) sonsərum dəwšin bə:d gurunə:r xaǰirbje alənka
(2) bi: sonsərum šin dəwšin bə:d gurunə:r xaǰirsəŋ alənka
292. Oh, you were so delighted for that.
(1) a: tərəndə: bajsč bjela:
(2) tərəndə: bajsč bjela:
293. All of the family members must be happy.
gəri: xu: xawjarən bajsč bjela:
294. Yes, whole family is waiting because he is coming back after a long while.
a: bəra:na:rida: xaǰirǰ uwe: alənka gəri: xu: xo:g kulče:ǰ bje
295. When he was going, everybody was sad.
jawgəčin gəri: xu:ji:n kok sanajin mo: boldala:
296. Especially your mother must have been most sad.
əwə:šin əkmə xajərəljǐǰ a:na
297. It is truly happy for us to meet again.
əimər o:lčsənda: unun bajsč a:bda
298. For that we will have a party at my home.
təgərə gərəmdan bajsəlte boldaŋ
299. Have a entirely nice time.
(1) gub bajsč a:wa:
(2) ši: ədəjə:r bajsč jawgane 'You have a nice time from now.'

<§14. Farewell>

300. It is not the time for the departure of the train yet.
tərəgi: jawgərnin boldwaga
301. Thirty minutes have left.
ədə: gočin mino:t kuldəŋ
302. I feel sorry that we are departing so soon like this.
əj xobjəlčəgəd dəmbəl xajərəljǐj jawa:
303. I feel sorry too.
bi: bas nja:rǰ a:bje
304. Thank you for your taking care of me these days.
wajrarida: nami: ərše:səŋčin banixəlǰ a:w
305. I feel sorry because I was not able to take care of you well.
(1) šami: sajkan ərše:ǰ šaddaŋ uwe:
(2) bi: šami: sajkan ərše:ǰ šaddaŋ uwe:
306. 'Write a letter after you returned home. Don't forget please!'
(1) xariǰ ǰešgən talgane 'Write a letter after you returned home.'
(2) xariǰ ǰešgən talga: bu: mart ag:ane
307. And, you also come again!
təgərə ši: bas irǰ a:gane
308. I will also miss you a lot.
bi: bas šami: dəmbəl ə:rǰ a:wa:ja
309. I will also miss this place a lot.
bi: bas ən gaǰari: dəmbəl ə:rənbje
310. See you! Live well!
uǰulčija sajn a:gane
311. See you! Live well!
uǰulčija sajn a:gane

<§15. Needlework>

312. Who has made this clothes?
ən warkəlšin anja ojsəŋ
313. My grandmother have made.
min sardwə:m ojsəŋ
314. What a beautifully made clothes is it!
jamər sajkan ojsəŋ
315. My grandmother's needle work is extremely excellent.
mini: sardəwə:min ojrəlin dəmbəl sajn
316. Then you must have learned needle work from her haven't you?
ši: sardəwə:jo:r ojrəlin sorsəŋši jə
317. I learned from my grandmother when I have time. But my needle work is not as good as my grandmother's.
(1) bi: čulə ərəndə: so:rǰ a:səŋbi nəkil sardwə:jo: noga:n ojrəlm sajn biše
(2) bi: čulə ərəndə: so:rǰ a:səŋbi teixtə čig agara sardəwə:də ul kurumbje
318. Did you learn from your grandmother when you found the time?
ši: ǰabin olǰ sardwə:jə:r sorsəŋši jə
319. I am learning from my grandmother now.
bi: ədə: sardəwə:jə:r sorǰ awǰ a:w
320. It is hard to learn needlework well for me.
bi: sajkan sorulərəm kəču: məkə

<§16. Taste for tea>

321. Would you like to have something to drink? (literally 'Let us drink something!')
nəkən jom o:daja
322. Thank you! (literally 'It will do.')

bolo:

323. What would you like to drink?
(1) ši: jo: o:gədə əršin kurə:
(2) ši: jo:nji: o:gədə əršin kurə:

324. I want to have a tea.
bi: čaj:i o:gəd ərəm kurə:

325. How do you like it?
jamərin awbši ja

326. Would you like to have a strong tea?
xar čaj awbši ja

327. Would like to make it thin?
šiŋkənin awbši ja

328. Would you like to have it with milk?
unjə: su:jin xoljoda ja

329. Mix a little bit of cow milk for me.
naməd očok unjə: su:jin xoljo

330. How about putting some sugar?
(1) satəŋd xoljorda ja (literally 'Mix to the sugar?')
(2) satəŋ xoljorda ja (literally 'Mix sugar?')

331. No sugar please!
bu: xoljo (literally 'Do not mix!')

332. Here you are!
ma

333. 'Thank you!'
banix

<§17. Hobby>

334. Weather is so good and it would be nice to take a trip.
təŋgəri: əjmər sajn na:dəčarəndan bologčixasəŋ

335. You must enjoy taking a trip.
(1) ši: na:dəgədə: dwaršin kurbje gə
(2) ši na:dəčigədə: dwaršin kurbje gə

336. Oh, yes.
   (1) a: təjmər
   (2) təjmər
337. There are many interesting things to see when we go here and there outside.
   (1) bə:d garǰ xulu: jawarašin uǰudugə sajn bajt uǰugə məkəši
   (2) bə:d garǰ xulu: jawarašin uǰudugə sajn uǰuǰ awna məkə
338. What do you like to do?
   ši: jo: xi:gəd əršin kurə:
339. I like singing.
   bi: ǰa:ndagəd ərəm kurə:
340. I like both singing and listening.
   (1) bi: ǰa:ndaǰ ǰa:ndagəji: sajn oǰum ǰa:ndali: sonsogəji: sajn uǰum
   (2) bi: ǰa:ndagəji: bas sajn uǰum ǰa:ndagəji: sonsogəji: bas sajn uǰum
341. Then do you like dancing too?
   (1) təgəre bəjləgə bas sajn uǰunši jə
   (2) təgərə bəjləgəji: sajn uǰuši jə
342. No, I do not like that.
   təršin sajn ul uǰum

Appendix 3

Data for the Grammatical Analysis

<§1. Nominals and case marking>

1.1 Personal pronouns

(1) First person plural exclusive/inclusive

1. We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.
   (1) ba dojo:r jawtgunba. ta awli: duləǰ jawta
   (2) ba dojo:r nursuǰ jawtgunba. ta awla:r duləǰ jawtə 'We will move and go to the river. You go to the mountain.'
2. Let us altogether go to the steppe.
   bad xawjarən kə:r tald ičija

(2) Personal pronoun, singular

3. They came here to see me.[1)]
   (1) təd nami: uǰugə ǰa:lan ənd irsəŋ
   (2) təd ma:ni: uǰugə ǰa:lan ənd irsəŋ 'They came here to see us.'
4. I gave him present.
   (1) bi: tədənd ǰaka ukusəŋb 'I gave them present.'

---

1) Question was aimed for the singular form (他爲了見我, 來這兒了), but our consultant simply replied as above.

(2) bi: tərənd ǰaka ukusəŋb
5. He also gave me present.
tər bas naməd ǰaka ukusəŋ
6. I like you.
bi: šami: ta:lənbi
7. You like him more.
(1) ši: əkmə tədni: ta:lənši 'You like them more.'
(2) ši: əkmə təri: ta:lənši
8. 'They left (from) here to go to you.'
təd šaməd ičigə ǰa:lan əndə:r jawsəŋ

(3) Personal pronoun, plural
9. They came here to see us.
təd badni: uǰugə ǰa:lan ənd irsəŋ
10. We gave them present.
ba tədənd ǰaka ukusəŋba
11. They also gave us present.
təd bas badənd ǰaka ukusəŋ
12. We welcome your coming.
ba irgətan ortiǰ a:wa:
13. You are better with them.
tədənti ta warəlčigədən sajn boldəŋ
14. They left (from) here to see you.
təd tani: uǰugə ǰa:lan əndə:r jawsəŋ

1.2 Singular and plural forms

(1) Singular and plural forms
15. a Chinese person
ǰuŋgwə xu:in
16. Chinese persons
ǰuŋgwə xu:dulin
17. a man and a woman
nək ərgun xu:ti nək əmgun xu:
18. men and women

ərgun xu:dulti əmgun xu:dul

19. a pupil and a teacher
    soročti səbudul
20. pupils and teachers
    (1) soročtidul səbutidul
    (2) soročti səbudul
21. a cattle and a horse
    ukurti morj
22. cattle and horses
    ukurdulti morjdul
23. a flower and a bird
    ilgati bildor
24. flowers and birds
    ilgadulti dəgi:dul

(2) Numerals and plurality marking

25. two horses
    xojor morj
26. many countries
    bəra:n gurun

1.3 Case and case marking

1.3.1 Nominative

27. Live long and be aged one hundred!
    (1) ort nas nasəlgane 'Live long!'
    (2) ort naǰilǰ ǰaw nasəlgane
    (3) ort nasti bolǰ ǰaw nasəlgane
28. I am an honest person.
    bi: nək to:nd xu:
29. Horse runs.
    morj xawlbje
30. Two persons came
    xojor xu: irsəŋ

1.3.2 Genitive

(1) General usages

31. My mother came.
    (1)(a) min əwə:m irsəŋ
    (b) mini: əwə:m irsəŋ
    (2) mini: əwə:m min irsəŋ
32. My house is at the center of the village.
    (1) mini: gerəm ajli: xo: dwandin
    (2) tədni: gərin bas ajli: xo: dwandin 'There house is also at the center of the village.

(2) Case marking for the subject of the embedded sentence

33. It is a clothes which my mother made.
    ənšin agara əwə:m ojsəŋ warkəlin
34. When my father came back, I was not at home.
    ača:m xaǰirsəŋdin bi: gərtə: ul a:səŋbi

(3) Expressions in genitive case

35. pork (literally 'pig's meat')
    gaxi: mjaga
36. dentist (literally 'a doctor who treats the teeth')
    šid dasəgə dajf
37. World champion (literally 'the first one of the world')
    təŋgəri: dwari: nəktə:rin
38. clock's hand, watch's hand
    čagi: ǰu:jin
39. teacher's college
    sifan ig tačokojin
40. Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region (literally 'The Autonomous Region of the Xinjiang Uyghurs')
    šinǰaŋ ojgori: wə:rdə: dasagə gaǰirin
41. breakfast
    banjərdix buda:
42. book's price
    ǰulə:ni: xoda:jin

43. train time table
    gal tərəgi: ərən čagin
44. eyeglasses
    (1) saro:lč
    (2) nidji: gu: (literally 'eye's glass')
45. Beijing city
    bə:ǰiŋ koton
46. Happy birthday to you!
    (1) tərdunšin xotorti boltəga
    (2) tərdunšin bajsəti boltəga

1.3.3 Accusative

(1) General usages

47. I bought rice from the market.
    bi: gjaja:r ka:ndə durəldəǰ awsəŋb
48. My mother is waiting for us.
    əwə:m mani: kulčə:ǰbje

(2) Indefinite object

49. My brother found money on the street.
    min aka:m tərgulə:r ǰiga olǰ awsəŋ
50. Children are reading books at home.
    učukər gərtə bitəg sorǰ bje

1.3.4 Instrumental

51. My father is making a table with wood.
    min ača:m mo:dor širə: xi:ǰ bje
52. We came here by horse.
    (1) ba morjti irsəŋba (literally 'We came with horse(s).')
    (2) ba morjd o:nǰ irsəŋba (literally 'We rode the horse(s) and came.'
53. It snows heavily in Bejing in winter.
    bə:ǰiŋd ugul čas bəra:n wara:

54. Mongolian is famous in the desert. (Original question was 'Mongolia is famous for desert (蒙古以沙漠有名/蒙古是沙漠有名的).')
moŋgul xu: šibtal gaǰird nərte

1.3.5 Comitative

55. I went mother's maiden home with my mother.
bi: əwə:tijə: ətgə gərtin ičisəŋbi
56. I went with my friend and studied book. (Original question was 'I read book (=studied) with my friend (我和朋友一起讀書了).'
bi: gučtijə: ičiǰ bitəg sorsəŋb

1.3.6 Dative-Locative

57. Old wolf does not enter to the trap.
sardi gusko: kodurd ul wara:
58. My father bought me a leather shoes.
ača:m naməd ars saj awǰ ukusəŋ
59. I told them an old story.
bi: tədənd kawčun urgil talǰ ukusəŋbi
60. I am the tallest in my village.
bi: ajld bəjim bur xundurin
61. I am living in Beijing.
(1) bi: bə:ǰiŋd amdaǰ a:bje
(2) təd beiǰiŋd amdaǰbje 'They are living in Beijing.'
62. I have that book. (literally 'That book is at me.')
tər ǰulə:n naməd bje

1.3.7 Directional

(1) General usage

63. This car is going to our village.
ən tərəg ma:n ajld ičiǰ bje
64. Are you returning home? (literally 'Are you returning?')
xarjəbši jə

(2) Indefinitive direction

65. Horses are running toward the steppe.
morjdul kəːr taliː ǰur xawlǰ ičiǰ bje
66. I do not know where my wife went.
nugurum xaːn ičisəŋin ul mədəm

(3) Path: Passing point when the action is done

67. I went by this way and came back straight.
(1) biː məːn tərgulːər tondokun jawǰ xaǰirsəŋb
(2) biː šokənəːr məːn tərguləːr xaǰirsəŋbi 'I came back straight this road.'
68. He also ran to the snow like a horse.
tər bas morj nogaːn časiː ulaǰ xawlbje
69. I crossed the deep water.
biː gwəŋ osiː ulaǰ gačirsəŋbi

1.3.8 Elative

70. Horses came back from the steppe.
morjdul kəːr talaːr xaǰirsəŋ
71. He fell from the horse.
tər morjoːr waːndaŋ
72. They went three hours from the water to the steppe.
təd murəːr kəːr tald gwarbən čag jawsəŋ

1.3.9 Ablative

(1) Starting point, source of the action

73. I came from Mongolia.
biː moŋgul gaǰiraːrin irsəŋbi
74. (It is) a wind which blows from the north.
waŋgod bəjəːr xəjsəŋ xəjin

(2) Direction

75. A red horse ran into the forest behind the house.
xolaːŋ morj gəriː xwajniː naːǰa burgaːsud warčisəŋ

76. A person with a horse returned (home).
morjti xu: gərtə: xarjsəŋ

(3) Goal

77. My father went into the forest holding an axe.
ača:m suguji: burgasi: dwatərin awǰ warčisəŋ
78. A cat came out and caught a mouse.
kə:kə gačarǰ ačikča:ni: barjsəŋ

(4) Cause

79. His father died of an illness.
ača:in əwrti bolǰ ugusəŋ
80. I cried because I was sad.
təgǰ bi: wailsəŋbi

(5) Comparison

81. Many people came today.
əndur bəra:n xu: irsəŋ
82. More people came yesterday than today.
(1) udiš irsəŋ xu: əndurə:r bəra:n irsəŋ
(2) udiš irsəŋ xu:dul əndurə:r bəra:n irsəŋ
83. It seems that the most people will come tomorrow.
bənj irgə xu: əkmə bəra:n bologə durte
84. This lake is also bigger than that lake.
ən nawr tər nawrə:r bas ig
85. Elder brother is three years older than younger brother.
aka:in dəwə:rin gwarbən nas ig

1.4 Personal possessive and reflexive marking

(1) Personal possessive marking

86. My horse is at home.
(1) min morjm gərtə:
(2) min morjmin gərtə:
87. My horse is very fast.
min morjm dəmbəl xordoŋ

88. I learn better than his elder brother. (Studying of mine is better than that of his elder brother.)
bi: təri: aka:ja:rin sorləm sajn
89. This child's eyes are very similar to its mother's eyes.
ən kəwki: nidin əwə:jə nidin dəmbəl wajr
90. Our village is very beautiful.
man ajilman durin dəmbəl nanda:kan
91. Where is your school?
šin tačokošin xa:n bje
92. He loves his child very much.
tər bəji: kəwkə: dəmbəl ta:la:

(2) Reflexive pronoun
93. I went there for myself.
bi: wə:r bəjə: ǰa:lan tənd ičisəŋbi
94. You went there for yourself.
ši: wə:r bəjə ǰa:lan tənd ičisəŋši
95. He also went that place for himself.
tər wə:r bəjə: ǰa:lan mən tər gaǰird ičisəŋ
96. We went there for our very selves.
ba wə:r bəjə: ǰa:lan mən tənd ičisəŋba
97. You also went there for yourselves.
ta bas wə:r bəjə: ǰa:lan tənd mən ičisəŋta
98. They also went there for themselves.
təd bas wə:r bəjə: ǰa:lan tənd ičisəŋ

(3) Reflexive possessive marking
99. I finished eating meal and cleaned my teeth.
bi: buda: idǰ barjǰ šida: oga:səŋbi
100. I love my wife.
bi: əmgə: ta:lənbi
101. I wrote a letter to my wife.
bi: əmgədə: ǰešgən ukusəŋb
102. I let my wife write a letter. (literally 'I told my wife "Do a letter."')
bi: əmgədə: ǰešgən xi: aldəŋb

103. I received my wife's letter.
(1) bi: əmgə ǰešgən ǰawlǰ awsəŋbi
(2) bi: əmgə ǰešgənin ǰawlǰ awsəŋbi
104. I read a letter together with my wife.
bi: əmgətijə: xojol ǰešgəni: xola:səŋba
105. I went to the market on my way home.
(1) bi: gərtə: xarjgəda: tərgulə:r gjad ičitaldəŋb
(2) bi: xarjgə tərguldə: šolokonə:r gjad warčsəŋb

1.5 Postposition

(1) General usage
106. It snowed from the morning to the evening.
ən čas banjərda:r ərəjku ǰaku warsəŋkə
107. I fight for my country.
bi: gurunə: ǰa:lan dajnd alčigə
108. I am sleeping on the grass.
bi: əwsi: də:ri:n wantəǰ abje
109. I read a letter together with my wife.
bi: əmgətijəə xojol ǰešgən xola:səŋba
110. I am happy as you.
bi: šami: noga:n xotorti
111. I am happy because of you.
bi: šami: ǰa:lan xotorti bolbje
112. I do hunting everyday.
bi: udur dulə gurə:s awla:čbje
113. Nobody knows except me.
nama:r bišin anja čig ul mədə:
114. After my father had left, my mother came.
ača:m jawsəŋ xwaina:rin əwə:m irsəŋ
115. According to the news, it snowed much in Mongolia.
(1) šinwənə:r uǰərəm məŋgu gaǰirdin bəra:n čas warsəŋla:
(2) bi: šinwənə:r uǰərəm məŋgu gəǰəg gaǰirdin ǰuǰa:n čas warsəŋla: 'As I watched the news, it snowed heavily in the place called Mongol.'

116. I saw no one on the way back (home).
xaǰirəgə tərguldə: xəni: čig uǰuǰ uwe:

<§2. Grammar of the verbals (1): Conjugational suffixes>

2.1 Indicative mood

2.1.1 Present tense

(1) Singular

117. I read book.
(1) bi: ǰulə:n uǰuǰ xola:b
(2) bi: ǰulə:n xola:b
118. You read book.
ši: ǰulə:n xola:

(2) Plural

119. They read book.
təd ǰulə:n xola:
120. We read book together.
bad xawjarən ǰulə:n xola:bda
121. We read book and you draw picture.
ba ǰulə:n xola: ətgəmba, ta njargan jurt
122. You read book.
ta ǰulə:n xol:at
123. They read book.
təd ǰulə:n xola:bje

2.1.2 Past tense

(1) Singular

124. I went to school yesterday.
bi: udiš tačokod ičisəŋbi
125. You went to school yesterday.
ši: udiš ta:čokod ičisəŋši

(2) Plural

126. They also went to school.
təd bas ta:čokod ičisəŋ
127. We went to school together yesterday.
*udiš ba xawjarən ta:čokod ičisəŋši[2)]
128. We read book yesterday. You drew picture.
udiš ba ǰulə:n xola:səŋba, ta nyargan njursəŋta
129. You also went to school yesterday.
ta bas udiš tačokod ičisəŋta
130. They also went to school.
təd bas udiš tačokod ičisəŋ

(3) Various past tense marking

131. I was born in Beijing.
bi: bə:ǰiŋd tursəŋ
132. He was also in Beijing.
tər bas beiǰiŋd tursəŋ
133. I came to Bejing yesterday.
bi: udiš bə:ǰiŋd irsəŋbi
134. I am living in Beijing from ten years ago.
bi: xarbən xo:ni: əməldin bə:iǰiŋd amdaǰ a:səŋbi
135. It rained yesterday.
udiš xwar warsəŋ
136. Rain has stopped now.
xwar ədə: bajsəŋ
137. Thank you for your help.
ši: xəwdəgə čin baŋgilǰ a:w
138. I studied Mongolian for ten years.
bi: moŋgul usugin xarbən xo:n sorsəŋbi
139. I have heard a lot about you.
bi: šami: ərgə bajti: sonssəŋbi
140. Once upon a time, there lived an old people in a village.
(1) ordon čagəd nək ajld nək atirka a:ǰ a:la

2) It should be "udiš ba xawjarən ta:čokod ičisəŋba".

(2) ordon nək ajld nək atirka a:ǰ a:la:

2.1.3 Future tense

(1) Singular

141. I will go to school tomorrow.
bi: bənj tačokod ičibje
142. You go to school tomorrow!
ši: bənj tačokd iči
143. They will also go to school tomorrow.
təd bas bənj tačokod ičibje

(2) Plural

144. Tomorrow, we will go to school together.
(1) *ba bənj xawjarən nəkənd tačokod ičibda
(2) bad bənj xawjarən nəkənd tačokod ičibda
145. Tomorrow, we will go to school. You stay at home.
ba bənj tačokod ičiba ta gərte a:t
146. You also go to school tomorrow.
ta bas bənj tačokod ičit
147. They also go to school tomorrow.
təd bas bənj tačokod ičibje

2.2 Intentional mood

148. I will also go to that place.
tər gaǰirt bi: bas ičibje
149. We will also go to that place.
tər gaǰirt ba bas ičiba

2.3. Imperative mood

(1) Typical imperative

150. Go back home now!
dajnšaŋ gərtə xarjja
151. Please go back home now!
dajnšaŋ ə:rǰ gərtə: xarjja
152. Please go back home together now!

dajnšaŋ xawjarən gərtəː xarjja

153. Please go back home together now!
dajnšaŋ xawjarən əːrǰ gərtə xarjja

(2) Special imperative: delayed command

154. Go tomorrow or the day after tomorrow!
bənj čaːǰ jawja

155. Come again at my home later!
dagje bas man gərtman irgətan ortǰ awaː

(3) Special imperative: for the third person

156. Let him go back home!
təriː gərtin arčaː tala

157. Let them go back home!
tədniː gərtin kurugəgə tala

(4) Special imperative: wish, hope

158. Let all of your business fulfilled!
bəraːn bajt ǰugujəːrəː butuǰ bje

159. Please forgive me!
namiː bu mawrka

160. Cheers for our nation! (literally 'Ten thousand years, my country!')
gurun tum nas nasltəga

(5) Persuading mood

161. Let us go all together!
(a) bad xawjarənd nəkənd jawja
(b) bad xawjarən nəkənd jawja

162. Let us read book all together!
bad nəkənd ǰuləːn uǰjat

2.4 Verbal noun suffixes

(1) Nominal clause

163. I heard that you have come here yesterday.

(1) biː sonsərum udiš šamiː ənd irsəŋ ələŋka
(2) biː sonsərum šamiː udiš ənd irsələŋka

164. I am very glad that you came here.
šin ənd irgəčin dəmbəl bajsč awaː

165. If (one) eats sugar much, (one's) stomach become sick.
satəŋ bəraːn idəːr gujəː əwrti bolbje

(2) Attributive clause

166. I heard the news that he had come back.
tədniː xaǰirbje əlǰ biː sonssəŋkə

167. I am reading a book which I bought yesterday.
udiš durəldəǰ aːčirsəŋ ǰuləːni biː xolaːǰ aːwka

168. Any pupil never knows it.
jamər čig soroč ən bajtiː ul mədəː

169. I bought a book that I will learn.
biː bəjm sorəgə ǰuləːniː durəldəǰ awsəŋb

170. textbook (literally 'a book to learn')
sorolga bitəg

2.5 Connective suffixes

2.5.1 Simultaneous relation

(1) Two actions happen parallel

171. We talked laughing.
bad əjnədəǰǰə usugulǰ jaːta

172. Children came back running.
kəwkər gujəːǰ xaǰirsəŋ

(2) Two clauses have different subjects

173. Father ate fish, Mother ate mutton.
əwəːm ǰagos idsəŋ ačaːm xonin mjagajin idsəŋ

2.5.2 Successive relation

174. I had eaten breakfast and went to school.
biː banjər budaː idəːldi tačokod ičisəŋbi

175. Yesterday, I bought a book and came back home.

(a) bi: udiš ǰulə:ni: durəldəǰ awa:d gərtə: xaǰirsəŋb
(b) bi: udiš ǰulə:ni: durəldəǰ awa:ldi gərtə: xaǰirsəŋb

2.5.3 Conditional connection

(1) Anterior clause expresses condition or assumption

176. If you go. I will go too.
ši: jawašin bi: bas jaw
177. If you learn well, your teacher will praise you.
ši: sorsin sajn a:garin šami: səbušin kə:nibje
178. If they want to come, let them come.
tədni: irgə dwarin kurərən irǰlatka

2.5.4 Opportunity connection

(1) Doing one action while the other is being done

179. Let us do hunting while we are going to the mountain.
awld gargəda: šolokonər gurə:s awlagatalja
180. Friend of that village would like to drop at your home.[3)]
tər ajli: gučin tan gərtan ičigə dorte

<§3. Grammar of the verbals (2): Derivational suffixes>

3.1 Causative voice

181. I brought water.
bi: os ačirsəmbi
182. My mother let me bring water.
əwə:m naməd os awčildaŋ
183. I killed a chicken.
(1) bi: nək kakra barjǰ awsəŋb
(2) bi: nək kakraji: barjǰ awsəŋbi

3) Original question was 'I would like to drop at your house when I go to that village (去那个村子的同時順便也想去你家看看).'

184. I let my younger brother kill a chicken.
bi: dəwdə: nək kakra barilgasəŋbi
185. My younger brother went to school.
min dəwm tačokod jawsəŋ
186. My mother let my younger brother go to school.
əwə:m dəwmin tačokod jawlgasəŋ

3.2 Passive voice

187. A hunter caught a rabbit.
awlačin tawl barjsəŋ
188. A rabbit was caught by a hunter.
tawl awlačind barjərtəŋ
189. I heard a child crying.
bi: kəwkuri: wajlgən sonsəŋb kə
190. From far away, a child's crying was heard.
xo:lo:r kəwkuri: wajldəŋ dawin sonsorčib ka
191. His father built a new house last year.
təri: ača:in nidan nək šiŋkən gər taldəŋ ka
192. This house is a house which was built last year. (This house is a house which (they) built last year.)
ən gər nidan taldəŋ gər

3.3 Reflexive voice

193. My mother is washing clothes.
əwə:m warkəl oga:ǰ bje
194. I swam in the river.
bi: do:d umpačisəŋbi
195. He hid my book.
tər mini ǰulə:nmin ǰuwəgə taldaŋ
196. He hid himself behind the door.
tər əwdi: xwajnin ǰuwəsəŋ

3.4 Reciprocal voice

197. My father and my mother are talking.

(1) ača:tim əwə:m usugəljĭĭ bje
(2) ača:tim əwə:min usugəljĭĭ bje

198. Two of them were fighting.
xojol ǰoguljĭisəŋ

3.5 Associative voice

199. Two together cooperated and beaten that one person.
xojol xəwdəǰ tər nək xu:ji: tarəkəsəŋba
200. I built a house with my own younger brother.
bi: dəwtijə: xojol gər taldəŋba
201. I am studying at school together with my friends.
(1) bi: tačokod gučtidultija: nəkənd sorǰ a:w
(2) bi: tašikod gučnurtija: nəkəl nəkənd sorǰ a:w

3.6 Progressive aspect

202. It is snowing now.
dajnšaŋ čas warǰ bje
203. I am eating meal now.
bi: dajnšaŋ buda: idǰ a:w
204. I am reading a book now.
bi: dajnšaŋ ǰulə:n xola:ǰ a:w

3.7 Repetitive aspect

205. I am reading book.
bi: ǰulə:n xola:ǰ a:w
206. I am reading this book again and again.
bi: ən ǰulə:ni: dagje dagje uǰuǰ a:w

3.8 Presumption

207. He is also reading a book.
tər bas ǰulə:n xola:ǰ bje
208. It seems that he is now reading a book.
tər dajnšaŋ ǰulə:n xola:ǰ agə noga:n durte

209. Father beats child.
ača: kəwkə: ljašbje
210. It seems that father did beat his own child.
ača:in kəwkə: ljašisəŋ noga:n durte

3.9 Intention

211. He came to this village to see his friend.
(1) tər gučə: uǰugənnə ǰa:lan ən ajld irsəŋ
(2) tər gučə: uǰugə ǰa:lan ən ajild irsəŋ
212. I went to a shop and bought a liquor.
bi: gya:d ičiǰ arig awčsəŋb

<§4. Usages of the auxiliary verbal constructions>

4.1 'to exist/to be'

(1) As a main verb
213. I was at home.
(1) bi: gərtə: a:ǰə:
(2) mən tər kə:kəl bi: gərtə: a:səŋb 'At that moment, I was at home.'
(3) mən tər kə:kəl bi: gərtə: a:səŋbi 'At that moment, I was at home.'
214. He has a son.
təri: no:n kəwkin bje

(2) Progressive aspect : present
215. I am reading a book now.
(1) bi: dajnšaŋ ǰulə:n uǰuǰ a:w
(2) bi: dajnšaŋ ǰulə:n xola:ǰ a:w
216. You are reading a book now.
ši: dajnšaŋ ǰulə:n xola:ǰ bješi
217. He is also reading a book.
tər l bas ǰulə:n xola:ǰ bje

(3) Progressive aspect: past

218. When my father came back, I was reading a book.
ača:m xaǰirsəŋdin bi: ǰulə:n xola:ǰ asəŋbi
219. When your father came back, you were reading a book.
ača:šin xaǰirsəŋdin ši: ǰulə:n xola:ǰ a:səŋši
220. When father came back, son was reading a book.
ača:in xaǰirsəŋdin kəwkin ǰulə:n xola:ǰ a:səŋ

(4) Progressive aspect: future

221. I will go back to school and study tomorrow.
bi: bənj tačokod xariǰ bitəg sorbi
222. You go back to school and study tomorrow.[4)]
ši: bənj tačokod xariǰ bitəg sor
223. He will go back to school and study tomorrow.
tər bənj tačokod xariǰ bitəg sorbje

(5) Progressive: situation

224. You are wearing a hat.
ši: magal əməstiši
225. My father came back.
ača:m xaǰirsəŋ

4.2 'to become'

(1) As a main verb

226. I became a student last year. (literally 'I went to school last year.')
bi: nidan ig tačokod ičisəŋbi

(2) Permission

227. You may smoke here.
ənd daŋgə tataǰ bolo:
228. You may leave now.
ši: dajnšaŋ jawarčin bolo:

4) Consultant understood it as an imperative sentence.

(3) Immediateness

229. It will rain soon. (literally 'It looks like raining soon.')
daešaŋ xwar warəlǰ bje
230. He will go to school now.
tər dajnšaŋ tačokod ičəː

4.3 'to receive'

(1) As a main verb

231. I received a present that my father gave to me.
ačaːm ukusəŋ ǰakain biː ǰawlǰ awsəŋbi

(2) Benefit

232. I bought a new clothes.
biː šiŋkəŋ warkəl awsəŋbi
233. I adopted that child.
(1) biː təriː təǰeːǰ awsəŋ kəwkum
(2) tər kəwk mini təǰeːǰ awsəŋ kəwkum 'That child is a child whom I adopted.'
234. I studied Mongolian.
biː moŋgul usugin sorsəŋbi

4.4 'to give'

(1) As a main verb

235. Teacher gave me a book.
səbu naməd ǰuləːn ukusəŋ
236. My father gave me a nice present.
ačaːm naməd sajkan ǰaka ukusəŋ

(2) Benefit

237. I told my teacher about my village.
biː səbudaː ajlaː urgilin tajlǰ ukusəŋbi
238. I read a book for my mother.
biː əwəːdəː bitəg xolaːǰ ukusəŋb
239. My mother sang a nursery song for us.
əwəːm maːnd kəwkuriː ǰaːndalin ǰandaːsəŋ

4.5 'to see'

(1) As a main verb
240. I saw fish in the river.
bi: do:jor ǰagos uǰusəŋbi

(2) Attempt
241. Try the new clothes!
šiŋkəŋ warkələ: əmusǰ awja
242. I bought and brought pastry. Taste!
(1) bi: djenšiŋ awǰ xaǰirsəŋb amtaǰ uǰu:
(2) bi: djenšiŋ awǰ xaǰirsəŋb am kurə:

4.6 'to be able to'

243. I can read book.
bi: bitəg xola:ǰ šaddəŋb
244. He can read book.
(1) tər ǰulə:n xola:ǰ šada:
(2) tər ǰulə:n xola:gə šada:
245. He can not read book.
tər ǰulə:n xola:ǰ ul šada:

4.7 'to have to do'

246. I leave today.
bi: undur jawbje
247. You read through this book in four days!
ši: durbən konoi: dwatərin ən ǰulə:ni: xola:ǰ bar

<§5. Negative sentence, interrogative sentence, quotations>

5.1 Nominal negation

248. I am a pupil.

bi: soroč

249. I am not a pupil.
bi: soroč biše

250. I was not a student at that time.
mən tər kə:kəl bi: soroč biše a:səŋb

251. He is an adult.
təršin ig xu:

252. He is not an adult.
tər ig xu: biše

253. He was not an adult at that time yet.
mən tər kə:kəl ig boldwa:ǰə

254. That child is pretty.
(1) tər kəwk nanda:kan
(2) tər kəwk nanda:kən durte

255. That child is not pretty.
tər kəwk nanda:kan durte biše

256. (The child) was not pretty at that time.
mən tər kə:kəl nanda:kan bišiŋ a:ǰa

5.2 Verbal negation

(1) Simple negation

257. I did not go to school yesterday.
bi: udiš tačokod ičiǰ uwe: kə

258. You did not go to school yesterday.
ši: udiš tačokod ičiǰ uwe: ši

259. They did not go to school yesterday.
təd udiš tačokod ičiǰ uwe:

260. They do not have money.
tədənd ǰiga uwe:

261. He can not go to school now.
tər dajnšaŋ tačokod ičiǰ ul šada:

(2) Negation of ability

262. You can not go to school now.
ši: dajnšaŋ tačokod ičiǰ ul šadši

263. He can not go to school now.[5)]

5.3 Negative imperative

264. You do not wear that clothes!
tər warkəli: ši: bu: əmus
265. You do not eat the apple!
tər gwə:z ši: bu: id
266. You do not touch with your hand!
ši: garja:ra: bu: barj
267. No entry to unauthorized persons! (literally 'Other people are not allowed to come in and come out.')
(1) bišiŋ xu:d warǰ garaldin ul bolo:
(2) bišiŋ xu:ji: warǰ garaldin ul bolo:
268. No smoking!
(1) daŋgə ul tatlga
(2) daŋgə ul o:lga

5.4 Interrogative sentence

269. Are you a pupil?
ši: soročči jə
270. Is he a teacher?
tər səbu jə
271. Did you go to school yesterday?
ši: udiš tačokod ičisəŋši jə
272. Did your grandmother come from Russia or come Mongolia?
sardwə:šin oroso:r irsəŋ jə, uwe: moŋgulo:r irsəŋ jə
273. Who are you?
ši: anja ši jə
274. Who is he?
tər anja jə
275. When did you come here?

---

5) Unanswered. Original question was 他現在不能去學校.

ši: xəǰə: ənd irsəŋši jə

276. How many people are there in this village?
ən ajld xədən a:ŋgəl bje

277. From where (your) grandfather comes?[6)]
sarča: xa:na:r irbje

278. You did not go to school yesterday, did you?
ši: udiš tačokod ičiǰ a:gəši jə

279. Oh, I did not go.
a: ičiǰ uwe:

280. Oh, I did go.
a: ičisəŋb

5.5 Quotation

281. I asked. "Did father came?"
bi: xaso:ǰ a:bje ača: irsəŋ ja

282. I said, "Did your father came?". He said "He did not come."
bi: ača:šin irsəŋ jə ələrəm tər irǰ uwe: əldaŋ

283. I thought that if my father had come, it would become good.
(1) bi: sanaram ača:ram irərim sajn bologəča:səŋ
(2) bi: irərəm ača:m irərin sajn bologəča:səŋ

284. I thought it would have been nice if father had come. Consultant said it is an impossible construction.[7)]

6) Original question was '爺爺從哪兒來?' which was aimed for the sentence 'Where did your grandfather come from?'

7) Original question was '我想爸爸要是來了就好了'.

References

Aerdazhabu 阿爾達扎布 (2000), 〈在達斡爾語中使用着, 而在現代蒙古語中已經消失了的≪蒙古秘史≫詞彙〉, ≪達斡爾族研究≫ 162-181, 內蒙古自治區達斡爾學會 (編), 呼和浩特: 內蒙古大學出版社.

BazylkhanБазылхан Б. (1977), *Қазақша-Монғолша Сөздік*, Редакторлары Ж. Ахмэт, Б. Батаа, Улаанбаатыр: Монғол Халық Республикасы Ғылым Академиясының Тіл Мен Эдебиет Институты.

Dictionary Department, Institute of Linguistics, Chinese Academy of Social Sciences (2002), *The Contemporary Chinese English Dictionary*, Beijing: Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press.

Ding 丁石慶 (1991), 〈哈薩克語對新疆達斡爾語語音的影向〉, ≪語言與翻譯≫ 1991年 第4期 (總28期), 60-62.

Ding 丁石慶 (1992), 〈新疆達斡爾語小舌音淺析〉, ≪民族語文≫ 1992年第5期, 53-57.

Ding 丁石慶 (1995), 〈新疆達斡爾語語音及其特點〉, ≪語言與翻譯≫ 1995年第1期 (總41期), 61-68.

Enhebatu 恩和巴圖 (1988), ≪達斡爾語與蒙古語 (*Dayur kele ba mongyol kele)*≫, 蒙古語族語言方言研究叢書 004, 呼和浩特: 內蒙古人民出版社.

Enhebatu 恩和巴圖 (2000), 〈內蒙古自治區達斡爾族轉用漢語普通話現狀調查報告〉, ≪達斡爾族研究≫ 182-197, 內蒙古自治區達斡爾學會 (編), 呼和浩特: 內蒙古大學出版社.

Enhebatu et al. 恩和巴圖 等 (編) (1984), ≪達斡爾語詞彙 (*Dayur kelen-ü üiges)*≫, 蒙古語族語言方言研究叢書 005, 呼和浩特: 內蒙古人民出版社.

Guo·Baerdeng 郭·巴尒登 (撰), 孟·英壽 (譯) (1997), 〈新疆達斡爾族歷史大事記〉, ≪新疆塔城市達斡爾族歷史語言文化研究學會會刊專輯≫ 1, 41-42, 新疆塔城市達斡爾族歷史語言文化研究學會.

Kara, G. (1990), "*ZHIYUAN YIYU* Index Alphabétique des Mots Mongols", *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hung.* XLIV (3), 279-344.

Lessing, Ferdinand D. et al. (1982), *Mongolian-English Dictionary*, Bloomingtgon: The Mongolia Society, Inc.

Ligeti, Louis (déchiffré), Kara, G (édité) (1990), "Un vocabulaire sino-mongol des yuan le *TCHE-YUAN YI-YU", Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hung.* XLIV (3), 259-277.

Mao 毛艷, 毅松 (主編) (2004), ≪達斡爾族: 內蒙古莫力達瓦旗哈力村調查≫, 中國民族村寨調查叢書, 昆明: 云南大學出版社.

Norman, Jerry (1978), *A Concise Manchu-English Lexicon*, Seattle and London: University of Washington Press.

Piao, Lianyu 박련옥 (2003), 〈흑룡강성 다우르어 지역사회 고찰〉, ≪알타이학보≫ 13: 113-123, 한국알타이학회.

Seong 성백인 (1983), 〈몽고어 다구르 방언의 음운체계 연구〉, ≪東方學志≫ 40: 119-152, 延世大學校國學研究院.

The International Phonetic Association (1999), *Handbook of the International Phonetic Association: A guide to the use of the International Phonetic Alphabet*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Tsumagari, Toshiro (2003), "Dagur," *The Mongolic languages*, edited by Juha Janhunen, 129-153, London and New York: Routledge.

UNESCO Ad hoc expert group on endangered languages (2003), *Language vitality and endangerment: Document submitted to the International Meeting on UNESCO Programme Safeguarding of Endangered Languages.* (http: //www.unesco.org/culture/ich/doc/src/00120-EN.pdf)

YU 유원수 (2003), 〈다고르어 치치하르 머일스 하위 방언의 기초 어휘의 구성〉, ≪한국알타이학회 2003년 학술논문집≫, 27-48, 한국알타이학회.

YU 유원수 (2004), ≪몽골비사≫, 서울: 사계절.

YU Wonsoo, KWON Jae-il (2004), "Preliminary remarks on the phonemic system of the Qiqihar Meilis dialect of the Dagur language," *Altai Hakpo* 14: 163-195. The Altaic Society of Korea.

Zhao et al. 趙明鳴, 冬瑛 (1997), 〈塔城地區達斡爾語語法的一些特點〉, ≪語言與翻譯≫ 1997年第4期 (總52期), 18-23.

Zhong 仲素純 (編著) (1982), ≪達斡爾語簡志≫, 中國少數民族語言簡志叢書, 北京: 民族出版社.

Zhuang 庄吉發 (譯) (1976), ≪清語老乞大≫, 臺北: 臺灣文史哲出版社.

達斡爾族網 (http: //www.dawoer.com)

Abstract

A Study of the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language

This book is a linguistic description of the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language, based on the fieldwork carried by The Mongolian Languages team of *Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages*, the Altaic Society of Korea.

In the first chapter, Dagur people, genetic position of the Dagur language, its 4 dialects are introduced. Also the aspect and the nature of the endangerment of this "severely endangered" language are discussed.

In the second chapter, we report our trip to Tacheng (Xinjiang, China), people who worked with us, and our consultants who were eager to help us.

The third chapter of this work includes the phonological, the morphological, and the syntactic features of the Tacheng Dagur dialect. In the phonology part, 18 vowel phonemes and 18 consonants phonemes are tentatively proposed with their allophones.

In the morphology, pertinent features to each parts of speech (noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb, adverb, postposition, particle, interjection) are discussed. In the syntax, remarks were made on the word order, finite forms, and conjunctions, etc.

In the appendix, 2,600 words, 340 conversational expressions, 283 sentences and constructions were presented in phonemic transcription with English meanings. Over 100 unanswered words are also presented in the separate section with Chinese and English meanings.